

Epic English

Matovu Issa

A pupil - friendly workbook

This book is designed to suit the remedial work for pupils in P.4, P.5, P.6 and P.7. It comprises grammar and comprehension activities. It was written for a humble cause.

Table of Contents

Preface	7
Dedication.....	8
Acknowledgement	9
SECTION A.....	10
VERBS	10
FORMATION OF VERBS.....	10
REGULAR VERBS.....	12
IRREGULAR VERBS.....	17
NOUNS.....	24
KINDS OF NOUNS	24
FORMATION OF NOUNS.....	27
SINGULAR AND PLURAL NOUNS	34
ADJECTIVES.....	52
DEGREES OF ADJECTIVES	52
FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.....	62
DOUBLE COMPARATIVES	98
ORDER OF ADJECTIVES	100
AS...AS	102
PREPOSITIONS.....	103
(a) SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS	103
(b) COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS.....	104
ADVERBS.....	113
TYPES OF ADVERBS	114
FORMATION OF ADVERBS.....	115
DEGREES OF ADVERBS.....	124
ORDER OF ADVERBS	126
POSITION OF ADVERBS	127
JUST AND ALREADY	129
ARTICLES	130

PARTICIPLES	132
PRESENT PARTICIPLES	132
PERFECT PARTICIPLES	133
PAST PARTICIPLES	134
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	135
IF 1 SENTENCES	135
IF 2 SENTENCES	136
IF 3 SENTENCES	136
RELATIVE CLAUSES	140
DEFINING CLAUSES	141
NON - DEFINING CLAUSES	144
ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS	146
PROVERBS	153
SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION	158
ING WORDS AS SUBJECTS	160
CONSIST/COMPRISE/COMPOSED/MADE UP	160
NOUN + POSSESSIVE PRONOUN	161
NO SOONER ... THAN	162
HARDLY/BARELY/SCARCELY/RARELY WHEN	163
ALTHOUGH /THOUGH/EVEN THOUGH/MUCH AS/WHEREAS	164
IT'S HIGH TIME	165
AFTER AND BEFORE	165
BORROW AND LEND	167
ARRIVE AND REACH	167
BELONG AND OWNER	168
LONG AND FAR	168
MUCH AND A LOT OF	169
BECAUSE AND SINCE	170
NOT EVEN/BARELY	172
BESIDE/NEXT TO/NEAR/CLOSE TO	173
SUCCEED AND MANAGE	173
BOTH ... AND	174

BOTH AND EITHER.....	175
EITHER AND TOO	176
CHARGED WITH/ ACCUSED OF/BLAMED FOR	177
PREFER AND LIKE	177
ALL ANDEVERY.....	178
ASSOONAS/IMMEDIATELY/THE MOMENT	179
BY WHOM/TO WHOM?	180
SO	181
BESIDES	182
EVER CLAUSES	183
WHAT CLAUSES.....	184
FOR, SINCE AND AGO.....	184
...BUT... ..	186
WHILE AND WHEN.....	186
AS	187
WISH CLAUSES	188
REQUESTS	191
HOMOPHONES.....	191
JUMBLED SENTENCES	192
PUNCTUATION	193
ANALOGIES	195
QUESTIONS AND RESPONSES	196
NEED TO/NEED FOR/NECESSARY	197
...NEEDN'T.../NECESSARY.....	198
...NEEDN'T HAVE/...NECESSARY	199
...AS WELL AS	200
...OR ELSE.../ ...IF NOT SO .../ ...OTHERWISE.. ..	201
...LIKELY TO.....	203
SINGLE WORD FOR MANY	204
OPPOSITES	216
GOING TO	231
BY THE TIME/BY THE END.....	231

AND SO.....	233
...AND NEITHER.....	234
...TOO...TO.....	235
...ENOUGH...TO.....	235
EITHER ... OR.....	236
NEITHER ...NOR.....	237
OUGHT TO/SHOULD/MUST/HAS TO/HAD BETTER	238
IN ORDER TO/SO AS	240
...MORE INTERESTED.....	241
EXCLAMATION	242
QUESTION TAGS.....	244
...HARDLY ...ANY/ALMOST NO/ALMOST NONE.....	246
LOOK FORWARD TO/LOOKING FORWARD TO	247
NONE OF/ A SINGLE/ALL THE	248
WOULD RATHER	249
NOT ONLY ... BUT ALSO.....	250
WHETHER... OR	252
SO THAT/SUCH THAT	253
SO /SUCH ... THAT.....	254
DESPITE THE/ IN SPITE.....	257
ALPHABETICAL ORDER.....	257
REFLEXIVE AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS	258
ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE.....	259
PREPOSITIONAL VERBS.....	262
DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH.....	263
IF / EXCEPT IF/ UNLESS.....	269
USED FOR AND USED TO.....	270
AS MUCH AS/ EQUALLY/ TWICE AS MUCH/ ETC.....	271
SOME AND ANY	272
SPELLING DRILLS	273
SECTION B.....	276
SHORT PASSAGES	276

WRITING A COMPOSITION	282
JUMBLED COMPOSITION	283
PICTURE COMPOSITION	283
POEMS	287
LETTER WRITING	289
WORD SPACING	295
IDIOMS FOR KIDS	297
COMMON MISTAKES	300
PROPER HANDWRITING	306

Preface

This work is not exhaustive and cannot boast to have covered the cosmic area of the English subject, but you can use it as a guideline for better performance. Make it your companion every day and God willing you will make it.

Dedication

To my uncle Charles. A very special dedication. I have taken a lot of your time, your talent and your patience. God willing, sometime, someday, I will take time and say “Thank you”. To my cousins, Bridget, Porshia and Doreen. To my bosom friend, Ssekyanzi Abdrahman. To the one I gave my heart to, Namugenyi Hadijah; I will always love you. Ours will always be epic love. To my mother (May Allah have mercy on her). You never gave up on me even though you had meagre resources. Your life was like a chisel that shaped mine. To my children, Ameera Maryam Ahumuza, Emir Mohsen Itungo and Ameera Aamal Kobugabe. To all my family and cronies.

Acknowledgement

I would like to express my heartfelt gratitude to my colleagues and comrades and to everyone who helped me from the conception to the completion of this book. This work has been influenced by a number textbooks, journals, websites, among other literature sources. As far as possible, they are all fully acknowledged. All the sources through which I drew this material are humbly credited.

Furthermore, I also deeply applaud my friends and family including, but not limited to Mr Ssekyanzi Abdul Rahman, Sheikh Sentongo Faisal, Hajj Nsubuga Issa, Sheikh Kalevu Swaib, Mr Sentongo Mansoor, Ms Nakalanda. J. Porshia, Mr Ankwashe Rodgers, Mr Seruyange Abubaker Kasule, Dr Kyeyune Yusuf, Mr Kajjara Sulaiman, Ms Musiime Naome, Mr Kigani Richard, Ms Nakamatte Hanifah, Mr Kiyimba Medh, Ms Florence Kiyimba, Dr. Sekyanzi Bob, Mr Kavanda Fabiano, Ms Namatovu Siyana, Mr Luyimbazi Noor, Mr Sserukabwe Bruhan, Ms Kirabo Hajjara, Mr Wamala Charles, students and staff of Kabula Muslim Secondary School, Wamatovu Muslim Secondary School, Kigaragara Vocational Secondary School, Rugaaga Modern School, Katende Progressive Vocational Secondary School, Equator College Nalukolongo, Ntare School, Kabula Madarasat Primary School, Crane Vision Primary School, Khadijja Secondary School, to mention but a few. Throughout this project I came to appreciate more than ever before how much we need others to accomplish our goals.

SECTION A

(Grammar)

VERBS

A verb is a doing or an action word, e.g.

- eat
- drink
- clean
- dirty
- soil
- smooth
- read

NB: There are many types of verbs, e.g. regular, irregular, stative, transitive, and intransitive verbs.

FORMATION OF VERBS

Word	Verb	Word	Verb
<i>Add prefix –en</i>		<u>Add suffix en</u>	
able	enable	black	blacken
circle	encircle	deaf	
courage	encourage	fat	deafen
danger	endanger	fresh	fatten
force	enforce	glad	
joy	enjoy	hard	freshen
large	enlarge	short	gladden
noble	ennoble	long	harden
slave	enslave	thick	shorten
throne	enthrone	tight	lengthen
title	entitle	tough	thicken
		light	tighten
		loose	toughen

<p><u>Add prefix -im</u></p> <p>pregnant prison poor</p> <p><u>Add prefix -be</u></p> <p>siege friend</p> <p><u>Add suffix -fy/ify</u></p> <p>false</p> <p>pure liquid solid just peace simple beauty clear satisfaction reliable identity glory mystery class</p> <p><u>Don't change</u></p> <p>dirty empty soil tidy busy smooth clap shame</p> <p><u>Miscellaneous</u></p> <p>success thought comfortable food</p>	<p>impregnate imprison impoverish</p> <p>besiege befriend</p> <p>falsify</p> <p>purify liquefy solidify justify pacify simplify beautify clarify satisfy rely identify glorify mystify classify</p> <p>dirty empty soil tidy busy smooth clap shame</p> <p>succeed think comfort feed</p>	<p>mad moist rough sweet wide worse broad fat fright flat fresh weak strong bright dark damp dead deep quiet quick red ripe sad sharp steep sick stiff straight less hard soft thick threat tough worse</p> <p><u>Add prefix -em</u></p> <p>power body bitter battle</p> <p><u>Add suffix -ize/ise</u></p> <p>central commercial custom</p>	<p>lighten loosen madden moisten roughen sweeten widen worsen broaden fatten frighten flatten freshen weaken strengthen brighten darken dampen deaden deepen quieten quicken redden ripen sadden sharpen steepen sicken stiffen straighten lessen harden soften thicken threaten toughen worsen</p> <p>empower embody embitter embattle</p> <p>centralise commercialise</p>
--	---	---	---

grass safe glass knee company cloth	graze save glaze kneel accompany clothe	eulogy formal general legal modern social standard national colony final	customise eulogise formalise generalise legalise modernise socialize standardise nationalise colonise finalize
--	--	---	--

REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS

Regular verbs end in *-d*, *-ed* and *-ied* in their past form. Irregular verbs do not end in *-ed* in their past form.

REGULAR VERBS

(a) Regular verbs ending in *e* form their past form by adding *d*, e.g.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Continuous
agree	agreed	agreed	agreeing
belie	belied	belied	belying
capture	captured	captured	capturing
compare	compared	compared	comparing
dance	danced	danced	dancing
die	died	died	dying
dye	dyed	dyed	dyeing
explore	explored	explored	exploring

lie (Not tell the truth)	lied	lied	lying
like	liked	liked	liking
love	loved	loved	loving
move	moved	moved	moving
note	noted	noted	noting
place	placed	placed	placing
replace	replaced	replaced	replacing
shade	shaded	shaded	shading
share	shared	shared	sharing
smoothe	smoothed	smoothed	smoothed
solve	solved	solved	solving
tie	tied	tied	tying
trade	traded	traded	trading
vie	vied	vied	vying
vote	voted	voted	voting
wave	waved	waved	waving
zero	zeroed	zeroed	zeroing

(b) Regular verbs that add *-ed* in their past form

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Continuous
allow	allowed	allowed	allowing
check	checked	checked	checking
clean	cleaned	cleaned	cleaning
clear	cleared	cleared	clearing
collect	collected	collected	collecting

counsel	counseled	counseled	counseling
correct	corrected	corrected	correcting
defend	defended	defended	defending
end	ended	ended	ending
fail	failed	failed	failing
fasten	fastened	fastened	fastening
fell	felled	felled	felling
fetch	fetches	fetches	fetching
fix	fixed	fixed	fixing
grade	graded	graded	grading
greet	greeted	greeted	greeting
hang (Kill by hanging)	hanged	hanged	hanging
hunt	hunted	hunted	hunting
jump	jumped	jumped	jumping
lock	locked	locked	locking
kick	kicked	kicked	kicking
open	opened	opened	opening
paint	painted	painted	painting
perform	performed	performed	performing
quench	quenched	quenched	quenching
quest	quested	quested	questing
repair	repaired	repaired	repairing
warn	warned	warned	warning
yawn	yawned	yawned	yawning
yearn	yearned	yearned	yearning

(c) Some regular verbs double their last consonants before adding ed.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Continuous
beg	begged	begged	begging
cancel	cancelled	cancelled	cancelling
chat	chatted	chatted	chatting
clap	clapped	clapped	clapping
dip	dipped	dipped	dipping
drag	dragged	dragged	dragging
drip	dripped	dripped	dripping
drop	dropped	dropped	dropping
expel	expelled	expelled	expelling
grab	grabbed	grabbed	grabbing
grin	grinned	grinned	grinning
hum	hummed	hummed	humming
knit	knitted	knitted	knitting
mop	mopped	mopped	mopping
nod	nodded	nodded	nodding
occur	occurred	occurred	occurring
pin	pinned	pinned	pinning
plan	planned	planned	planning
peg	pegged	pegged	pegging
prefer	preferred	preferred	preferring
quit	quitted	quitted	quitting
rob	robbed	robbed	robbing
rub	rubbed	rubbed	rubbing

skid	skidded	skidded	skidding
skim	skimmed	skimmed	skimming
skip	skipped	skipped	skipping
slam	slammed	slammed	slamming
slap	slapped	slapped	slapping
slip	slipped	slipped	slipping
snap	snapped	snapped	snapping
stab	stabbed	stabbed	stabbing
stop	stopped	stopped	stopping
stir	stirred	stirred	stirring
transfer	transferred	transferred	transferring
travel	travelled	travelled	travelling
trim	trimmed	trimmed	trimming
zip	zipped	zipped	zipping

(d) Regular verbs that end in y change y to i before adding ed.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Continuous
busy	busied	busied	busying
bury	buried	buried	burying
carry	carried	carried	carrying
comply	complied	complied	complying
copy	copied	copied	copying
cry	cried	cried	crying
deny	denied	denied	denying

dirty	dirtied	dirtied	dirtying
dry	dried	dried	drying
empty	emptied	emptied	emptying
envy	envied	envied	envying
hurry	hurried	hurried	hurrying
lobby	lobbied	lobbied	lobbying
marry	married	married	marrying
fry	fried	fried	frying
occupy	occupied	occupied	occupying
party	partied	partied	partying
rely	relied	relied	relying
satisfy	satisfied	satisfied	satisfying
spy	spied	spied	spying
study	studied	studied	studying
supply	supplied	supplied	supplying
tally	tallied	tallied	tallying
terrify	terrified	terrified	terrifying
tidy	tidied	tidied	tidying
try	tried	tried	trying
worry	worried	worried	worrying

IRREGULAR VERBS

(a) Irregular verbs whose past simple and past participles are similar.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Continuous
------------	-------------	-----------------	------------

bend	bent	bent	bending
build	built	built	building
burn	burnt	burnt	burning
buy	bought	bought	buying
bleed	bled	bled	bleeding
breed	bred	bred	breeding
bring	brought	brought	bringing
catch	caught	caught	catching
creep	crept	crept	creeping
deal	dealt	dealt	dealing
dig	dug	dug	digging
feed	fed	fed	feeding
feel	felt	felt	feeling
fight	fought	fought	fighting
get	got	got	getting
grind	ground	ground	grinding
hang (of clothes)	hung	hung	hanging
lay (of eggs)	laid	laid	laying
learn	learnt	learnt	learning
lend	lent	lent	lending
light	lit	lit	lighting
lose	lost	lost	losing
make	made	made	making
mean	meant	meant	meaning
say	said	said	saying

seek	sought	sought	seeking
sell	sold	sold	selling
shine	shone	shone	shining
shoe	shod	shod	shoeing
shoot	shot	shot	shooting
sleep	slept	slept	sleeping
smell	smelt	smelt	smelling
spell	spelt	spelt	spelling
spoil	spoilt	spoilt	spoiling
stand	stood	stood	standing
sting	stung	stung	stinging
strike	struck	struck	striking
string	strung	strung	stringing
sweep	swept	swept	sweeping
swing	swung	swung	swinging
teach	taught	taught	teaching
tell	told	told	telling
understand	understood	understood	understanding
win	won	won	winning
wind	wound	wound	winding
wreak	wrought	wrought	wreaking

(b) Irregular verbs which change completely in their past simple and past participle.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Continuous
------------	-------------	-----------------	------------

be	was/ were	been	being
begin	began	begun	beginning
bite	bit	bitten	biting
break	broke	broken	breaking
choose	chose	chosen	choosing
do	did	done	doing
draw	drew	drawn	drawing
drink	drank	drunk	drinking
drive	drove	driven	driving
eat	ate	eaten	eating
fall	fell	fallen	falling
fly	flew	flown	flying
forbid	forbade	forbidden	forbidding
forget	forgot	forgotten	forgetting
freeze	froze	frozen	freezing
give	gave	given	giving
go	went	gone	going
grow	grew	grown	growing
hide	hid	hidden	hiding
mistake	mistook	mistaken	mistaking
ride	rode	ridden	riding
ring	rang	rung	ringing
see	saw	seen	seeing
sew (of clothes)	sewed	sewn	sewing
show	showed	shown	showing

sing	sang	sung	singing
sink	sank	sunk	sinking
speak	spoke	spoken	speaking
steal	stole	stolen	stealing
swear	swore	sworn	swearing
swim	swam	swum	swimming
take	took	taken	taking
tear	tore	torn	tearing
wear	wore	worn	wearing
weave	wove	woven	weaving
write	wrote	written	writing

(c) Irregular verbs which do not change in all forms

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Continuous
broadcast	cost	cost	costing
bust	bust	bust	busting
burst	burst	burst	bursting
cast	cast	cast	casting
cost	cost	cost	costing
cut	cut	cut	cutting
hit	hit	hit	hitting
hurt	hurt	hurt	hurting
interbreed	interbred	interbred	interbreeding

let	let	let	letting
lip - read	lip - read	lip - read	lip - reading
miscast	miscast	miscast	miscasting
mishear	misheard	misheard	mishearing
mislay	mislaid	mislaid	mislaying
misspend	misspent	misspent	misspending
offset	offset	offset	offsetting
outbid	outbid	outbid/outbidden	outbidding
outshine	outshone	outshone	outshining
preset	preset	preset	presetting
quit	quit	quit	quitting
read	read	read	reading
recast	recast	recast	recasting
rend	rent	rent	rending
rid	rid	rid	ridding
set	set	set	setting
shed	shed	shed	shedding
shit	shit	shit	shitting
shut	shut	shut	shutting
sit	sit	sit	sitting
slit	slit	slit	slitting
spit	spit	spit	spitting
split	split	split	splitting
spoil	spoil	spoil	spoiling
spread	spread	spread	spreading

sublet	sublet	sublet	subletting
telecast	telecast	telecast	telecasting
thrust	thrust	thrust	thrusting
typecast	typecast	typecast	typecasting
upset	upset	upset	upsetting
wed	wed	wed	wedding
wet	wet	wet	wetting

Activity

Use the correct form of the word in brackets to complete each of the items.

- Ukraine has been _____ by Russian forces. (circle)
- We were asked to _____ the animals. (food)
- Africans were _____ on the Caribbean islands. (slave)
- Swamp reclamation _____ our environment. (danger)
- The suspect was _____ yesterday. (prison)
- The goats are _____ on the hilltop. (grass)
- Reading _____ our thinking capacity. (broad)
- She _____ down yesterday. (knee)
- The naughty boy has _____ his shirt. (dirty)
- The girl _____ her room and went out. (tidy)
- Rebecca's story _____ everybody who heard it. (sad)
- I angrily _____ the door and went out. (slam)
- Who will _____ the new law? (force)
- Our teacher always _____ us to work harder. (courage)
- She has _____ her books properly. (shelf)
- He _____ many crates of soda. (sale)
- She _____ all the trash in the rubbish bin. (empty)
- By whom was the race _____? (win)
- The game was _____ by the behaviour of the drunken fans. (mar)
- The residents wanted to know when new king would be _____. (throne)
- We _____ the diva after her performance on stage yesterday. (clap)
- They were asked by the sentry to _____ themselves. (identity)
- The government has _____ the women. (power)
- Water was _____ from a hole in the can. (drip)
- Believers must _____ God every day. (glory)
- The sky was _____ by the moon. (light)
- You must avoid _____ your body while getting an injection. (stiff)
- Hard life can really _____ you. (rough)
- The woman _____ the wet clothes on the line. (peg)
- My mother says that she _____ people with curly hair. (envy)

15. Every day Anne ____ sums from Hajjara.
(copy)
16. He was accused of ____ his father.
(shame)
17. Can you ____ your question? (clear)
18. The body of Mahatma Gandhi was ____.
(cremate)
19. Solar light can ____ the room. (bright)
20. The girl was ____ her hair. (dye)
21. We should ____ our life. (joy)
22. I can ____ on you. (reliable)
23. My work has been _____. (simple)
24. The bent jerrycan should be _____.
(straight)

41. Joyce ____ a merry tune as she walked along.
(hum)
42. Musoke and Muwonge ____ absent
yesterday. (to be)
43. The boys kicked the ball so hard that it ____.
(burst)
44. The shopkeeper ____ the scale every time he
wants to measure sugar. (zero)
45. The fallen hero was ____ by a number of
people. (eulogy)
46. We cannot ____ owing to monkey pox.
(social)

NOUNS

A noun is a naming word, e.g.

- juice
- man
- communication

KINDS OF NOUNS

(a) Common nouns

These name all things, e.g.

man

boy

cup

goat

flowers

father

uncle

music

(b) Proper nouns

These are specific names of people, places, things, etc. They begin with capital letters, e.g.

Muhammad

Mary

Mecca

Jamaica

Ruhanga

Father

Qur'an

Bible

Monday

French

Mother

Father, e.g. Father loves his children.

(c) Singular and plural nouns

Singular means one while plural means more than one, e.g.

Singular	girl	book	class	box	loaf	leaf	tooth	deer	toe	fly
Plural	girls	books	classes	boxes	loaves	leaves	teeth	deer	toes	flies

(d) Collective nouns

These are group names, e.g.

- A sheaf of corn

- A swarm of bees
- A canteen of cutlery
- A shoal of fish
- A party of friends
- A suite of furniture
- A school of whales
- A group of islands
- A herd of cattle
- A galaxy of
- A litter of puppies
- A pair of shoes
- A flight of steps
- A suit of clothes
- A chest of drawers
- A pack of wolves
- A set of tools
- A host of angels

(e) Compound nouns

These comprise more than one word, e.g.

Separate words	Hyphenated words	Combined words
Chief Justice	Maid – of – honour	Congressman
Empire State Building	Mother – in – law	Classroom
Hard drive		Horseback
High School		Horsepower
Post Office		Network
United States		Stepmother

,

(f) Possessive nouns

These show ownership, e.g. ladies' hats, children's books, a kangaroo's tail, an eagle's beak, a boys' school, a dog's house, a teachers' meeting, rabbits' burrows, horses' hoofs, Archimedes' principle, etc.

(g) Abstract nouns

These are names of feelings and ideas, etc. Abstract nouns cannot be touched, e.g.

- Love
- Hatred
- Development
- Communication
- Marriage
- Happiness

NB: The following list will largely concentrate on abstract nouns.

FORMATION OF NOUNS

Word		Word	Noun (s)
<u>End -ent</u>		<u>End in -al</u>	
achieve	achievement	approve	approval
agree	agreement	arrive	arrival
advert	advertisement	betray	betrayal
amaze	amazement	bury	burial
announce	announcement	deny	denial
apart	apartment	propose	proposal
appoint	appointment	remove	removal
catch	catchment	try	trial
commit	commitment	<u>End in -ty</u>	
complain	complaint	able	ability
defile	defilement	acid	acidify
develop	development	anxious	anxiety
disappoint	disappointment	beautiful	beauty

employ	employment	capture	captivity
enrol	enrollment	Christian	Christianity
entertain	entertainment	cruel	cruelty
establish	establishment	curious	curiosity
excite	excitement	generous	generosity
govern	government	honest	honesty
imprison	imprisonment	humble	humility
invest	investment	loyal	loyalty
judge	judgement	modest	modesty
manage	management	poor	poverty
mistreat	mistreatment	responsible	responsibility
move	movement	safe	safety
punish	punishment	secure	security
recruit	recruitment	sincere	sincerity
study	student		
		<u>End in -th</u>	
<i>an/ian/ean</i>		broad	breadth
Christ	Christian	deep	depth
comedy	comedian	grow	growth
diet	dietician	true	truth
Egypt	Egyptian	long	length
Ethiopia	Ethiopian	young	youth
Europe	European	wide	width
History	Historian	<u>End in -t</u>	
magic	magician	comfortable	comfort

Mathematics	Mathematician	dry	drought
musician	musician	fly	flight
optic	optician	frighten	fright
Physics	Physician	guilty	guilt
Paris	Parisian	high	height
vegetable	vegetarian	pursue	pursuit
<u>End –ion/ation/ition/ision</u>		receive	receipt
abolish		sit	seat
abort	abolition	thirsty	thirst
act	abortion	weigh	weight
accuse	action		
add	accusation	<u>End in –dom</u>	chiefdom
admire	addition	chief	freedom
admit	admiration	free	kingdom
apply	admission	king	
attract	application	<u>End in –hood</u>	childhood
calculate	attraction	child	falsehood
cancel	calculation	false	
circulate	cancellation		
collect	circulation		
collide	collection	<u>End in –ship</u>	friendship
combine	collision	friend	partnership
compete	combination	partner	membership
complete	competition	member	
communicate	completion	<u>End in –age</u>	breakage

compose	communication	break	knowledge
comprehend	composition	know	marriage
conclude	comprehension	marry	shortage
confuse	conclusion	short	spillage
conserve	confusion	spill	wastage
convict	conservation	waste	
correct	conviction	<u>End in -ness</u>	brightness
deceive	correction	bright	business
declare	deception	busy	cleanliness
describe	declaration	clean	cleverness
devote	description	clever	darkness
disqualify	devotion, devotee	dark	forgiveness
educate	disqualification	forgive	happiness
edit	education	happy	illness
examine	edition	ill	laziness
explain	examination, examinee	lazy	kindness
extend	explanation	kind	sadness
erode	extension	sad	selfishness
exhaust	erosion	selfish	shabbiness
imagine	exhaustion	shabby	steadiness
inform	imagination	steady	ugliness
inseminate	information	ugly	
intend	insemination	<u>End in -ee</u>	addressee
introduce	intention	address	employee
invite	introduction	employ	interviewee

invigilator	invitation	interview	trainee
occupy	invigilation	train	
oppose	occupation	<i>End in -er/or</i>	actor
organise	opposition	act	collector
persuade	organization	collect	consumer
protect	persuasion	consume	cooker
provide	protection	cook	developer
recommend	provision	develop	employer
receive	recommendation	employ	generator
repeat	reception, receptionist	generate	indicator
revise	repetition	indicate	runner
rotate	revision	run	timer
supervise	rotation	time	
tax	supervision	<i>End in -ful</i>	bagful
prepare	taxation	bag	cupful
pronounce	preparation	cup	handful
pollute	pronunciation	hand	houseful
<u>End in -ance/ence</u>	pollution	house	spoonful
absent		spoon	
appear		<i>End in -ism</i>	baptism
assist	absence/absenteeism	baptise	Buddhism
brilliant	appearance	Buddha	consumerism
defy	assistance	consume	militarism
disappear	brilliance	military	modernism
distant	defiance	modern	

disturb	disappearance	<u>End in -ist</u>	economist
defend	distance	economy	extremist
excel	disturbance	extreme	Marxist
enter	defence	Marxism	scientist
exist	excellence	science	
innocent	entrance, entry	<u>Miscellaneous</u>	accuracy
hinder	existence	accurate	behaviour
maintain	innocence	behave	belief, believer
present	hindrance	believe	choice
obey	maintenance	choose	departure
perform	presence	depart	dirt
<u>prefer</u>	obedience	dirty	failure
silent	performance	fail	hatred
	preference	hate	heat
	silence	hot	hunger
		hungry	injury
		injure	inquiry
		inquire	laughter
		laugh	loan
		lend	loss
		lose	pressure
		press	pride
		proud	sale
		sell	speech
		speak	service

		serve scrutinise sign	scrutiny signature
--	--	-------------------------------------	---------------------------

Activity

Complete each of the following items using the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. The boys were charged with _____. (disobey)
2. The _____ of the word “ewe” is strange. (pronounce)
3. There was a smartly dressed _____ at the hotel. (receive)
4. The local authorities are responsible for the _____ of these roads. (maintain)
5. The wedding _____ will take place in the hotel gardens. (receive)
6. Water _____ endangers our environment. (pollute)
7. His speech was full of _____. (repeat)
8. The wolves started to howl as ____ fell. (dark)
9. The _____ is very blunt. (cut)
10. Many people attended the _____ of the old chief. (bury)
11. She has got her _____ letter from Kyambogo University. (admit)
12. Pupils must seek _____ from the administrators. (permit)
13. The ____ of the late Patel were kept in a black urn. (cremate)
14. _____ is a major problem in Africa. (Poor)
15. It is ____ to speed on busy roads. (mad)

16. In her aunt's will, Julie was chosen to be the _____. (heir)
17. The _____ did not win the debate because they were not prepared. (oppose)
18. The stranger's _____ was illegible. (sign)
19. They attentively listened to the president's _____. (speak)
20. The _____ are learning right now. (study)
21. The dog gobbled up the _____ of the chicken. (remain)
22. It was a hearty _____. (laugh)
23. Bad weather delayed the _____ of the plane. (depart)
24. Many people were killed in the _____ against the government. (rebel)
25. After a little _____, Simon agreed to lend the boys his new bicycle. (persuade)
26. The _____ arrived in this morning's post. (invite)
27. The patient needs expert medical _____. (treat)
28. She wrote an excellent _____ about dogs. (compose)
29. Arsenal suffered a serious _____ to Barcelona last night. (lose)
30. We all would like to live a life of _____. (please)
31. Cyrus was dazzled by the _____ of the sun. (bright)
32. The teacher scolded us for our _____. (lazy)
33. The baker reported the _____ of his identity card. (lose)
34. She has just got a _____ from Centenary Bank. (lend)
35. Baking is a profitable _____. (busy)
36. We were given a front _____. (sit)
37. I can feel the _____ of the oven. (hot)
38. He was rewarded because of his _____. (humble)
39. Only one _____ had the required qualifications for the job. (apply)
40. The dead bodies were taken to the _____. (cremate)

SINGULAR AND PLURAL NOUNS

Singular means one while plural means more than one.

Singular	Plural
----------	--------

Add s	
<u>avacado</u>	avocados/ avacadoes
banana	bananas
bay	bays
belief	beliefs
book	books
boy	boys
cafe	cafes
chair	chairs
chef	chefs
chief	chiefs
chimney	chimneys
cliff	cliffs
cloth	cloths
combo	combos
cook	cooks
cupboard	cupboards
curio	curios
day	days
dozen	dozens/dozen
donkey	donkeys
dwarf	dwarfs
dynamo	dynamos
egg	eggs
formula	formulas/formulae

girl	girls
guy	guys
handkerchief	handkerchiefs
hippo	hippos
holiday	holidays
hoof	hoofs/hooves
house	houses
igloo	igloos
journey	journeys
market	markets
mat	mats
monkey	monkeys
oath	oaths
ox-plough	ox - ploughs
pencil	pencils
phone	phones
photo	photos
piano	pianos
play	plays
radio	radios
ray	rays
reef	reefs
rhino	rhinos
roof	roofs
Saturday	Saturdays

scarf	scarfs/scarves
stadium	stadiums
spice	spices
soldier	soldiers
soloist	soloists
songster	songsters
tin	tins
toy	toys
tray	trays
tree	trees
trinket	trinkets
trolley	trolleys
turkey	turkeys
typo	typis
valley	valleys
video	videos
volcano	volcanos/ volcanoes
way	ways
wharf	wharfs/wharves
window	windows
youth	youths

Add es to nouns ending in ch, s, sh, o or x

avocado	avocados/ avacados
---------	--------------------

ax	axes
bench	benches
box	boxes
bunch	bunches
bus	buses
bush	bushes
brush	brushes
church	churches
clash	clashes
coach	coaches
dish	dishes
dress	resses
echo	echoes
flash	flashes
fox	foxes
fungus	funguses/fungi
gas	gases
gecko	geckos
hero	heroes
kangaroo	kangaroos
mango	mangoes
match	matches
mosquito	mosquitoes
rash	rashes
syllabus	syllabuses/syllabi

toothbrush	toothbrushes
tornado	tornadoes
vertex	vertexes
volcano	volcanoes/ volcanos
watch	watches
zero	zeroes

Irregular plurals

agendum	agenda
auditorium	auditoria/ auditoriums
aquarium	aquaria
bacterium	bacteria
child	children
crematorium	crematoria/ crematoriums
emporium	emporia
forum	fora
index	indices/ indexes
louse	lice
medium	media
millennium	millenia/ millenniums
mouse	mice
ox	oxen
radius	radii/ radiuses
stadium	stadia/ stadiums

vertex	vertices/ vertexes
--------	--------------------

Change the vowel of the singular

axis	axes
basis	bases
crisis	crises
goose	geese
hypothesis	hypotheses
man	men
oasis	oases
synthesis	syntheses
tooth	teeth
woman	women

Some nouns remain unchanged

aircraft	aircraft
audience	audience
barracks	barracks
deer	deer
doe	doe
fish	fish
flour	flour
grouse	grouse

headquarters	headquarters
hundred	hundred
milk	milk
mutton	mutton
oil	oil
sand	sand
salt	salt
sheep	sheep
swine	swine
trout	trout
water	water

Some nouns are always plural. So, they take a plural verb, e.g.

My shorts are big, not My shorts is big.

My brother has a pair of trousers, not ... a trouser.

binoculars	binoculars/ pair of binoculars
compasses	pair of compasses
glasses	glasses/ pair of glasses
greens	greens
jeans	jeans/ pair of jeans
pajamas	pajamas/ pair of pajamas
pants	pants/ pair of pants
pliers	pliers/ pair of pliers
scissors	scissors/ pair of scissors

shorts	shorts/ pair of shorts
tights	tights/ pair of tights
tongs	tongs/ pair of tongs
trousers	trousers/ pair of trousers

Some nouns end in -s, yet they are singular, e.g.

- Mathematics was my favourite subject.
- Politics is a dirty game.

athletics	athletics
civics	civics
economics	economics
electronics	electronics
gymnastics	gymnastics
mathematics	mathematics
measles	measles
mumps	mumps
news	news
physics	physics
politics	politics

Some nouns can be singular or plural, e.g.

- A television series.
- Two television series.

means	means
series	series
species	species

Think of a sum of money, a period of time, a distance, etc. as one thing, e.g.

- Three years isn't a long time.
- Two miles wasn't too far to walk.
- Five hundred thousand dollars was stolen in the bank robbery.

Plurals of pronouns

I	we
he	they
she	they
it	they
me	us
him	them
her	them
it	them
this	these
my	our
his	<u>their</u>
her	their
its	their
mine	ours
his	theirs
her	theirs
that	those
it	those

Change *f* to *v* and add *es* to nouns ending in *f* and *fe*

bookshelf	bookshelves
calf	calves
elf	elves
half	halves
hoof	hooves
knife	knives
leaf	leaves
loaf	loaves
sheaf	sheaves
shelf	shelves
thief	thieves
wharf	wharves
wife	wives
wolf	wolves

When y is preceded by a consonant, change y to i and add es to nouns ending in y

army	armies
baby	babies
belly	bellies
berry	berries
ceremony	ceremonies
city	cities
country	countries

dairy	dairies
diary	diaries
dictionary	dictionaries
dummy	dummies
fly	flies
lady	ladies
party	parties
penny	pennies
pigsty	pigsties
pony	ponies
sanctuary	sanctuaries
secretary	secretaries
spy	spies
story	stories

Make first noun plural

attorney general*	attorneys general/ attorney generals
brother-in-law	brothers - in - law
commander-in-chief	commanders - in – chief
commissioner general*	commissioners general/ commissioner generals
daughter-in-law	daughters - in – law
editor - in - chief	editors - in - chief
father-in-law	fathers - in – law
head of cattle*	head of cattle

head of department	heads of department
head of state	heads of state
master of ceremonies	masters of ceremonies
mother-in-law	mothers - in - law
officer – in - charge	officers - in - charge
passer - by	passers - by
prisoner - of - war	prisoners of war
secretary general*	secretaries general/ secretary generals
sister-in-law	sisters - in - law
son-in-law	sons - in – law
teacher on duty	teachers on duty

Make the second noun plural

attorney general*	attorney generals/ attorneys general
bookshelf	bookshelves
boyfriend	boyfriends
bus stop	bus stops
bystander	bystanders
chalkboard	chalkboards
child soldier	child soldiers
choirmaster	choirmasters
cupful	cupfuls
commissioner general*	commissioner generals/ commissioners general
disc jockey	disco jockeys

dustbin	dustbins
fireman	firemen
girlfriend	girlfriends
headteacher	headteachers
housemaid	housemaids
housewife	housewives
maidservant	maidservants
matchbox	matchboxes
matchstick	matchstick
mousetrap	mousetraps
ox-plough	ox – ploughs
passenger plane	passenger planes
pay slip	pay slips
policeman	policemen
postmaster	postmasters
post office	post offices
secretary general*	secretary generals/ secretaries general
signpost	signposts
stepbrother	stepbrothers
stepdaughter	stepdaughters
stepfather	stepfathers
stepmother	stepmothers
stepsister	stepsisters
stepson	stepsons
tablecloth	tablecloths

toothbrush	toothbrushes
wallpaper	wallpapers
workman	workmen

Drop the apostrophe

baker's	bakers
butcher's	barbers
chemist's	butchers
Cleaner's	chemists
Dentist's	chemists
Doctor's	dentists
Draper's	doctors
Dry cleaner's	drapers
Fishmonger's	dry cleaners
Florist's	fishmongers
Grocer's	florists
Hairdresser's	grocers
Jeweller's	hairdressers
Optician's	jewellers
Pharmacist's	opticians
Stationer's	pharmacists
Vet's	stationers
	vets

Make the two nouns plural

boy's game	boys' games
child's toy	children's toys
lady's bag	ladies' bags
Man fighter	men fighters
manservant	menservants
man soldier	men soldiers
man's wallet	men's wallets
woman doctor	women doctors
woman jockey	women jockeys

Activity I

Rewrite each of the items giving the plural of the underlined word.

- 1 The baker added a spoonful of sugar to the mixture.
- 2 Our English teacher has gone on a tour.
- 3 She uses a kitchen knife to cut the cake.
- 4 The head of state has attended today's summit.
- 5 The cook will use a matchstick to light the fire.
- 6 Kindly send me that milk bottle.
- 7 The school administrator bought an office chair last week.
- 8 We were helped by a bystander.
- 9 The waitress was holding a kitchen towel.
- 10 That basket was woven out of papyrus.
- 11 Does a child need a mobile phone?
- 12 Our teacher of mathematics taught us how to measure the radius of a circle.

13 Several revelers were thrown out of the auditorium.

14 I have a head of cattle.

15 She is a milkman.

Activity II

Fill in the blank space with the most suitable word

1 The scissors ____ not very sharp.

2 Twenty kilogrammes ____ not too much, is it?

3 She has bought a ____ of jeans.

4 A car is a ____ of transport.

5 I cannot find my binoculars. Have you seen ____?

6 That skilful ____ has repaired the broken window panes.

7 We didn't buy any meat because all the ____ in the city were closed.

8 Elena used to write in her ____ her daily events.

9

10 A ____ is a doctor for children.

11 They had to buy another litre of milk from the ____.

12

13

14

15

Activity III

Use the correct form of the word in brackets

1 None of my ____ has laid an egg today. (goose)

2 I saw many _____ in the desert. (oasis)

3 Mr Musoke has several _____ on his farm. (doe)

4 A million has six _____. (zero)

5

Activity IV

Write the plural form

1 cloth

2 tablecloth

3 vertex

4 lady's bag

5 ladybug

6 ox – plough

7 shepherd

8 synthesis

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

Activity V

Rewrite giving the singular form of the underlined word.

- 1 We live in extended families.
- 2 The policemen enforce law and order.
- 3 Sonia goes to church on SundaySundays.
- 4 My father bought for me nice - looking pianos.
- 5 What are mousetraps used for?

ADJECTIVES

These are descriptive words. An adjective describes more about a noun or pronoun.

Consider:

- A tall building
- A beautiful girl
- Violet eyes
- A wooden table

NB: Adjectives appear in three degrees i.e. simple, comparative and superlative degree.

DEGREES OF ADJECTIVES

Simple degree

You use the simple degree to talk about one noun or pronoun. Can you underline adjectives in each of the following items?

- Milly is a brown girl.
- Ashiraf is a tall boy.
- BBC is a nice radio.
- The house has a smooth surface.

Comparative degree

This compares two sides, people, things, etc. This degree is usually followed by *than*. At times, this degree is preceded by *the*. Use the correct form of the word in brackets.

- Maryam is _____ than Jessica. (smart)
- Of the dual, the first one is the _____. (good)
- He walked long. He reached far. (Begin: The...)
The longer he walked, the farther he reached.

Superlative degree

This talks about more than two parties, people or things. It is preceded by *the*. Can you complete each of the following items correctly?

- Thomas is the _____ boy I have ever seen. (fat)
- Rwanada is the _____ country in East Africa. (small)
- Solomon was the _____ man in history. (wise)
- The _____ team won the match. (good)
- The Nile is the _____ river in the world. (long)

Simple degree	Comparative degree	Superlative
<u>Adjectives that add er and est</u>		
able	abler	ablest
active	more active	most active
angry	angrier	angriest
apt	apter	aptest
baggy	baggier	baggiest
big	bigger	bigger
bony	bonier	boniest
busy	busier	busiest
brainy	brainier	brainiest
brave	braver	bravest
breezy	breezier	breeziest
brief	briefe	briefest
brisk	brisker	brisket
bulky	bulkier	bulkiest
bumpy	bumpier	bumpiest
busy	busier	busiest
calm	calmer	calmest/most calm

cautious	more cautious	most cautious
cheap	cheaper	cheapest
cheery	cheerier	cheeriest
chilly	chillier	chilliest
cloudy	cloudier	cloudiest
clumsy	clumsier	clumsiest
common	commoner	commonest
corny	cornier	corniest
crafty	craftier	craftiest
crazy	crazier	craziest
creepy	creepier	creepiest
cruel	crueller	cruellest
curly	curlier	curlier
curvy	curvier	curviest
cute	cuter	cutest
dark	darker	darkest
deadly	deadlier/more deadly	deadliest/most deadly
dear	dearer	dearest
deep	deeper	deepest
dense	denser	densest
difficult	more difficult	most difficult
dim	dimmer	dimmest
dirty	dirtier	dirtiest
doomy	doomier	doomiest
dreamy	dreamier	dreamiest

dressy	dressier	dressiest
drunk	drunker	drunkest
dry	dryer	dyest
dull	duller	dullest
dusty	dustier	dustiest
early	earlier	earliest
easy	easier	easiest
empty	emptier	emptiest
famous	more famous	most famous
faint	fainter	faintest
fair	fairer	fairest
fancy	fancier	fanciest
far	farther/further	farthest/furthest
fast	faster	fastest
fatty	fattier	fattest
few	fewer	fewest
filthy	filthier	filthiest
fine	finer	finest
firm	firmer	firmest
fit	fitter	fittest
flashy	flashier	flashiest
flat	flatter	flattest
flowery	flowerier	floweriest
floppy	flopier	floppest
foggy	foggier	foggiest

frank	franker/more frank	frankest (Never say: most frank)
free	freer	freest
fresh	fresher	freshest
friendly	friendlier	friendliest
fruity	fruitier	fruitiest
full	fuller	fullest
funny	funnier	funniest
fussy	fussier	fussiest
gentle	gentler	gentlest
gloomy	gloomier	gloomiest
glossy	glossier	glossiest
great	greater	greatest
greedy	greedier	greediest
green	greener	greenest
grim	grimmer	grimmost
hairy	hairier	hairiest
handsome	handsomer/more handsome	handsomest/most handsome
handy	handier	handiest
happy	happier	happiest
hard	harder	hardest
hasty	hastier	hastiest
healthy	healthier	healthiest
heartly	heartier	heartiest
heavy	heavier	heaviest
hefty	heftier	heftiest

high	higher	highest
holy	holier	holiest
horny	honier	horniest
horsey	horsier	horsiest
hot	hotter	hottest
hungry	hungrier	hungriest
hunky	hunkier	hunkier
ignorant	more ignorant	most ignorant
important	more important	most important
juicy	juicier	juiciest
keen	keener	keenest
kind	kinder	kindest
knotty	knottier	knottier
large	larger	largest
late	later	latest
lazy	lazier	laziest
lengthy	lengthier	lengthiest
light	lighter	lightest
likely	likelier/more likely	likeliest/most likely
little	littler/less	littlest/least
lively	livelier	liveliest
lofty	loftier	loftiest
lonely	lonelier	loneliest
long	longer	longest
loose	looser	loosest

loud	louder	loudest
lovely	lovelier	loveliest
low	lower	lowest
lowly	lowlier	lowliest
lucky	luckier	luckiest
meaty	meatier	meatiest
mere	No comparative for mere	merest
merry	merrier	merriest
messy	messier	messiest
mighty	mightier	mightiest
mild	milder	mildest
moody	moodier	moodiest
mushy	mushier	mushiest
near	nearer	nearest
neat	neater	neatest
needy	needier	neediest
new	newer	newest
nice	nicer	nicest
noisy	noisier	noisiest
old	older/elder	oldest/eldest
pale	paler	palest
plain	plainer	plainest
poor	poorer	poorest
pretty	prettier	prettiest
pricey	pricier	priciest

punchy	punchier	punchiest
pure	purer	purest
pushy	pushier	pushiest
queer	queerer	queerest
quick	quicker	quickest
quiet	quieter	quietest
rainy	rainier	rainiest
rare	rarer	rarest
raw	rawer	rawest
ready	readier	readiest
red	redder	reddest
risky	riskier/more risky	riskiest/most risky
sad	sadder	saddest
safe	safer	safest
salty	saltier	saltiest
scaly	scalier	scaliest
scanty	scantier	scantest
scarce	scarcer	scarcest
scary	scarier	scariest
severe	severer	severest
sexy	sexier	sexiest
shabby	shabbier	shabbiest
shady	shadier	shadiest
shaggy	shaggier	shaggiest
shaky	shakier	shakiest

sharp	sharper	sharpest
shiny	shinier	shiniest
shoddy	shoddier	shoddiest
short	shorter	shortest
shrewd	shrewder	shrewdest
shy	shyer	shyest
simple	simpler//more simple	simplest//most simple
sincere	No comparative	sincerest
skinny	skinnier	skinniest
sleek	sleeker	sleekest
sleepy	sleepier	sleepiest
slippy	slippier	slippiest
sloppy	sloppier	sloppiest
small	smaller	smallest
smoky	smokier	smokiest
smooth	smoother	smoothest
snappy	snappier	snappiest
sneaky	sneakier	sneakiest
soggy	soggier	soggiest
sorry	sorrier/more sorry	sorriest/most sorry
sparse	sparser	No superlative for sparse
speedy	speedier	Speediest
spicy	spicier	spiciest
sporty	sportier	sportiest
steady	steadier	steadiest

sticky	stickier	stickiest
stingy	stingier	stingiest
stinky	stinkier	stinkiest
stocky	stockier	stockiest
stony	stonier	stoniest
stormy	stormier	stormiest
strange	stranger	strangest
strict	stricter	strictest
stuffy	stuffier	stuffiest
sturdy	sturdier	sturdiest
successful	more successful	most successful
sunny	sunnier	sunniest
sure	surer	surest
sweet	sweeter	sweetest
swift	swifter	swiftest
tall	taller	tallest
tasty	tastier	tastiest
thick	thicker	thickest
thin	thinner	thinnest
thorny	thornier	thorniest
tidy	tidier	tidiest
tight	tighter	tightest
tough	tougher	toughest
trendy	trendier	trendiest
tricky	trickier	trickiest

ugly	uglier	ugliest
unhappy	unhappier/more unhappy	unhappiest/most unhappy
unlikely	unlikelier/more unlikely	unlikeliest/most unlikely
unlucky	unluckier/more unlucky	unluckiest/most unlucky
weak	weaker	weakest
wide	wider	widest
wise	wiser	wisest
<u>Adjectives that change completely</u>		
good		
well	better	best
bad	better	best
much	worse	worst
many	more	most
ill	more	most
	worse	worst

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES

Word	Adjective
<u>Add ful</u>	
bash	bashful
beauty	beautiful
bounty	bountiful
care	careful

cheer	cheerful
colour	colourful
cup	cupful
delight	delightful
doubt	doubtful
dread	dreadful
duty	dutiful
fate	fateful
fear	fearful
force	forceful
fright	frightful
fruit	fruitful
glass	glassful
grace	graceful
gratitude	grateful
hate	hateful
harm	harmful
help	helpful
house	houseful
hope	hopeful
hurt	hurtful
joy	joyful
law	lawful
meaning	meaningful
mercy	merciful

mind	mindful
mouth	mouthful
mourn	mournful
pain	painful
peace	peaceful
pity	pitiful
plate	plateful
play	playful
plenty	plentiful
power	powerful
remorse	remorseful
resent	resentful
rest	restful
right	rightful
spoon	spoonful
stress	stressful
skill	skilful
spite	spiteful
succeed	successful
tact	tactful
thought	thoughtful
truth	truthful
use	useful
wish	wishful
wistful	wistful

wonder	wonderful
youth	youthful
<u>Add less</u>	
blame	blameless
care	careless
colour	colourless
cloud	cloudless
defense	defenseless
doubt	doubtless
effort	effortless
emotion	emotionless
end	endless
faith	faithless
fear	fearless
flaw	flawless
harm	harmless
hair	hairless
head	headless
heart	heartless
heed	heedless
help	helpless
hope	hopeless
job	jobless
joy	joyless

law	lawless
meaning	meaningless
mind	mindless
mercy	merciless
motion	motionless
odour	odourless
pain	painless
pity	pitiless
point	pointless
power	powerless
price	priceless
fruit	fruitless
pain	painless
reckless	reckless
relent	relentless
rest	restless
ruthless	ruthless
roof	roofless
sense	senseless
sleep	sleepless
tear	tearless
thank	thankless
time	timeless
tire	tireless
thought	thoughtless

top	topless
tooth	toothless
use	useless
<u>Add ble</u>	
access	accessible
accept	acceptable
achieve	achievable
acknowledge	acknowledgeable
adjust	adjustable
adore	adorable
arable	arable
advise	advisable
afford	affordable
amiable	amiable
amicable	amicable
apply	applicable
avail	available
avoid	avoidable
break	breakable
capacity	capable
charity	charitable
chew	chewable
comfort	comfortable
communicate	communicable

cure	curable
dispose	disposable
do	doable
duration	durable
eat	eatable
enjoy	enjoyable
fashion	fashionable
favour	favourable
knowledge	knowledgeable
misery	miserable
move	movable
note	notable
permit	permissible
pity	pitiable
port	portable
present	presentable
reason	reasonable
rely	reliable
respond	responsible
sense	sensible
service	serviceable
stable	stable
suit	suitable
sustain	sustainable
terror	terrible

use	usable
value	valuable
vary	variable
<u>Add or end v</u>	
air	airy
anger	angry
ash	ashy
bag	baggy
blood	bloody
bone	bony
brain	brainy
bulk	bulky
bush	bushy
business	busy
chalk	chalky
class	classy
cloud	cloudy
curl	curly
cream	creamy
dust	dusty
dirt	dirty
ease	easy
filth	filthy
flower	flowery

fun	funny
fur	fury
fog	foggy
frost	frosty
glass	glassy
gloss	glossy
grass	grassy
grease	greasy
greed	greedy
guilt	guilty
hair	hairy
hand	handy
haste	hasty
health	healthy
heaviness	heavy
heart	hearty
hill	hilly
horn	horny
hunger	hungry
ice	icy
juice	juicy
length	lengthy
leaf	leafy
luck	lucky
milk	milky

might	mighty
mist	misty
mud	muddy
need	needy
noise	noisy
oil	oily
rain	rainy
rock	rocky
rose	rosy
rust	rusty
sand	sandy
salt	salty
sex	sexy
shine	shiny
silk	silky
skin	skinny
sleep	sleepy
smell	smelly
smoke	smoky
snow	snowy
soap	soapy
sog	soggy
speed	speedy
spice	spicy
spike	spiky

steam	steamy
stick	sticky
stone	stony
storm	stormy
sugar	sugary
sun	sunny
taste	tasty
thirst	thirsty
thorn	thorny
trend	trendy
trick	tricky
water	watery
wealth	wealthy
wear	weary
wind	windy
winter	wintry
word	wordy
worth	worthy
Addous	
acrimony	acrimonious
adventure	adventurous
adultery	adulterous
advantage	advantageous
ambition	ambitious

anxiety	anxious
auspice	auspicious
autonomy	autonomous
blasphemy	blasphemous
bulb	bulbous
caution	cautious
ceremony	ceremonious
credit	credulous
conscience	conscious
courage	courageous
continue	continuous
danger	dangerous
delicacy	delicious
disaster	disastrous
envy	envious
error	erroneous
fame	famous
fiction	fictitious
fury	furious
gas	gaseous
generosity	generous
glamour	glamorous
glutton	gluttonous
grace	gracious
grief	grievous

glory	glorious
harmony	harmonious
hazard	hazardous
humour	humorous
incest	incestuous
infection	infectious
industry	industrious
jealousy	jealous
joy	joyous
luxury	luxurious
marvel	marvellous
melody	melodious
merit	meritorious
miracle	miraculous
mischief	mischievous
monotony	monotonous
mountain	mountainous
mystery	mysterious
nerve	nervous
outrage	outrageous
piety	pious
poison	poisonous
pomp	pompous
pretend	pretentious
prosper	prosperous

ridicule	ridiculous
religion	religious
right	righteous
riot	riotous
thunder	thunderous
scandal	scandalous
space	spacious
study	studious
suspect	suspicious
synonym	synonymous
treachery	treacherous
vary	various
victory	victorious
virtue	virtuous
volume	voluminous
zeal	zealous
<u>Add ish</u>	
baby	babyish
boy	boyish
black (All colours can take this form)	blackish
child	childish
fever	feverish
girl	girlish
red	reddish

self	selfish
sheep	sheepish
sky	skyish
slave	slavish
slug	sluggish
style	stylish
woman	womanish
<u>Add -ic</u>	
apology	apologetic
Arab	Arabic
athlete	athletic
chaos	chaotic
drama	dramatic
energy	energetic
fantasy	fantastic
hero	heroic
hygiene	hygienic
magnet	magnetic
metal	metallic
ocean	oceanic
problem	problematic
prophet	prophetic
real	realistic
science	scientific

sympathy	sympathetic
volcano	volcanic
<u>Add en</u>	
ash	ashen
beget	begotten
bespeak	bespoken
break	broken
choose	chosen
drink	drunken
east	eastern
fall	fallen
freeze	frozen
forget	forgotten
forsake	forsaken
gold	golden, e.g. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - golden boot - golden opportunity - golden dreams - golden memories - golden crown - golden era - golden rule - golden boy - golden years - golden moment - golden age - golden hair
hide	
load	hidden laden

maid	maiden
mistake	mistaken
old	olden
prove	proven
rot	rotten
sink	sunken
steal	stolen
swell	swollen
wax	waxen
west	western
wood	wooden
wool	woollen
write	written
north	northern
south	southern
Add al	
accident	accidental
addition	additional
agriculture	agricultural
alphabet	alphabetical
anus	anal
benefit	beneficial
bible	biblical

biology	biological
botany	botanical
bride	bridal
category	categorical
centre	central
ceremony	ceremonial
choir	choral
class	classical
cleric	clerical
colony	colonial
comic	comical
condition	conditional
constitution	constitutional
continent	continental
crime	criminal
culture	cultural
cylinder	cylindrical
detriment	detrimental
development	developmental
economy	economical
election	electoral
electricity	electrical
emotion	emotional
educate	educational, e.g. - educational tour

Equator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - educational trip - educational walk
error	Equatorial
face	errant
fact	facial
flower	factual
globe	floral
habit	global
herb	habitual
identify	herbal
industry	identical
influence	industrial
intellect	influential
intention	intellectual
magic	intentional
marry	magical
	marital
medicine	medical
memory	memorial
music	musical
nation	national
nature	natural
office	official
origin	original
parent	parental

person	personal
picture	pictorial
phrase	phrasal
potent	potential
president	presidential
profession	professional
promotion	promotional
province	provincial
provision	provisional
psychology	psychological
region	regional
satire	satirical
scepticism	sceptical
suicide	suicidal
season	seasonal
secretary	secretarial
sphere	spherical
territory	territorial
tide	tidal
tradition	traditional
tribe	tribal
tropic	tropical
virus	viral
voice	vocal

<p><u>Add ular</u></p> <p>angle</p> <p>circle</p> <p>muscle</p> <p>module</p> <p>molecule</p> <p>oval</p> <p>pop</p> <p>rectangle</p> <p>single</p> <p>spectacle</p> <p>table</p> <p>triangle</p>	<p>angular</p> <p>circular</p> <p>muscular</p> <p>modular</p> <p>molecular</p> <p>ovular</p> <p>popular</p> <p>rectangular</p> <p>singular</p> <p>spectacular</p> <p>tabular</p> <p>triangular</p>
<p><u>Add ive</u></p> <p>abuse</p> <p>act</p> <p>addict</p> <p>attend</p> <p>appreciate</p> <p>argument</p> <p>assert</p> <p>attend</p> <p>attract</p> <p>authority</p>	<p>abusive</p> <p>active</p> <p>addictive</p> <p>attentive</p> <p>appreciative</p> <p>argumentative</p> <p>assertive</p> <p>attentive</p> <p>attractive</p> <p>authoritative</p>

collect	collective
compare	comparative
compete	competitive
construct	constructive
consult	consultative
cooperate	cooperative
correct	corrective
create	creative
deceive	deceptive
decide	decisive
defend	defensive
describe	descriptive
detect	detective
destruct	destructive
digest	digestive
discuss	discursive
distinct	distinctive
divide	divisive
educate	educative, e.g. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Educative programme - Educative role - Educative play - Educative movie
effect	effective
erode	erosive
exclude	exclusive

expense	expensive
explode	explosive
extend	extensive
feast	festive
figure	figurative
imagine	imaginative
impress	impressive
innovate	innovative
include	inclusive
interact	interactive
investigate	investigative
legislate	legislative
manipulate	manipulative
object	objective
obstruct	obstructive
offend	offensive
permit	permissive
persuade	persuasive
punish	punitive
predict	predicative
prevent	preventive
produce	productive
prospect	prospective
protect	protective
provoke	provocative

<p>receive</p> <p>reflect</p> <p>relate</p> <p>reproduce</p> <p>respond</p> <p>restrict</p> <p>subject</p> <p>submit</p> <p>seduce</p> <p>succeed</p> <p>support</p> <p>talk</p>	<p>receptive</p> <p>reflective</p> <p>relative</p> <p>reproductive</p> <p>responsive</p> <p>restrictive</p> <p>subjective</p> <p>submissive</p> <p>seductive</p> <p>successive</p> <p>supportive</p> <p>talkative</p>
<p><u>Add -ry</u></p> <p>ambulance</p> <p>custom</p> <p>discipline</p> <p>example</p> <p>imagine</p> <p>legend</p>	<p>ambulatory</p> <p>customary</p> <p>disciplinary</p> <p>exemplary</p> <p>imaginary</p> <p>legendary</p>
<p><u>Add -ly</u></p> <p>brother</p> <p>cost</p> <p>coward</p> <p>dead</p>	<p>brotherly</p> <p>costly</p> <p>cowardly</p> <p>deadly</p>

earth	earthly
father	fatherly
friend	friendly
hour	hourly
leisure	leisurely
like	likely
live	lively
love	lovely
man	manly
month	monthly
mother	motherly
neighbour	neighbourly
night	nightly
sick	sickly
sister	sisterly
week	weekly
year	yearly
<u>Add nt</u>	
absence	absent
abundance	abundant
absorb	absorbent
adhere	adherent
assist	assistant
compete	competent

comply	compliant
decency	decent
defy	defiant
differ	different
distance	distant
disobey	disobedient
dominate	dominant
dormancy	dormant
efficiency	efficient
excellence	excellent
expect	expectant
evidence	evident
fraud	fraudulent
hesitate	hesitant
ignorance	ignorant
importance	important
innocence	innocent
incidence	incident
indecent	indecent
lenience	lenient
obey	obedient
patience	patient
persist	persistent
please	pleasant
repent	repentant

resist	resistant
silence	silent
suffice	sufficient
tolerate	tolerant
vacate	vacant
Add some	
awe	awesome
cumber	cumbersome
grue	gruesome
hand	handsome
irk	irksome
loath	loathsome
quarrel	quarrelsome
tire	tiresome
toil	toilsome
trouble	troublesome
<u>Change verb to past simple</u>	
educate	educated, e.g. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - An educated person - An educated guess
excite	excited
fascinate	fascinated
interest	interested
Ordinal numbers	
one	once, first

two	twice, second
three	thrice, third
four	fourth
five	fifth
six	sixth
seven	seventh
eight	eighth
nine	ninth
ten	tenth
eleven	eleventh
twelve	twelfth
thirteen	thirteenth
twenty	twentieth
twenty-one	twenty first
thirty	thirtieth
forty	fortieth
fifty	fiftieth
sixty	sixtieth
seventy	seventieth
eighty	eightieth
ninety	ninetieth
hundred	hundredth
Miscellaneous	
breadth	broad

cruelty	cruel
death	dead
depth	deep
favour	favourite
freedom	free
growth	grown
heat	hot
injure	injured
justice	just
pride	proud
richness	rich
safety	safe
strength	strong
truth	true
width	wide
youth	young
<u>Compound adjectives</u>	
A monster with two heads	A two - headed monster
A house with three rooms	A three - roomed house / ... room house
A stranger with one eye	A one - eyed stranger
A pipe with two mouths	A two - mouthed pipe
A sword with double edges	A double - edged sword
A child who behaves well	A well - behaved child
A woman with light skin	A light -skinned woman

A girl with a straight nose	A straight - nosed girl
Men with strong bodies	Strong - bodied men.
Insects with two wings	Two - winged insects
A stool with two legs	A two - legged stool
A knife with sharp edges	A sharp - knife
A boy with a bald head	A bald - headed boy
A family with six members	A six - member family
A delegation of ten doctors	A ten - doctor delegation
A conference of four days	A four - day conference
A book of twenty pages	A twenty - page book
A child of five years old	A five - year old child
Meat that is free of fat	Fat - free meat
A student whose mind is absent	An absent - minded student
Experience that opens the eyes	Eye - opening experience
A man with middle age	A middle - aged man
People who speak Spanish	Spanish - speaking people
A town with many people	A densely - populated town
A contract for a short term	A short - term contract
Water that is as cold as ice	Ice – cold water
Cows that are bred at home	Home – bred cows
Fish that is dried by the sun	Sun – dried fish
An assignment of ten pages	A ten – page assignment
A room that is lit brightly	A brightly – lit room
A hut facing east	An east – facing hut
A poet that is known by many people	A well – known poet

<p>A building of fifty storeys</p> <p>A decision at the last minute</p> <p>A kitchen that is free of smoke</p> <p>A project that is going on</p> <p>A boy that works hard</p>	<p>A fifty – storey building</p> <p>A last – minute decision</p> <p>A smoke – free kitchen</p> <p>An ongoing project</p> <p>A hard-working boy</p> <p>Long – lasting drought</p> <p>Easy – going person</p> <p>Record – breaking</p> <p>Ready – made</p> <p>High – quality</p> <p>Home – made</p> <p>Ice – cold</p> <p>Sun - dried</p>
<p>Adjectives from phrases</p> <p>A dog without teeth</p> <p>A pupil that obeys</p> <p>A pan for frying</p> <p>A costume for swimming</p> <p>A room for dining</p>	<p>A toothless dog</p> <p>An obedient pupil</p> <p>A frying pan</p> <p>A swimming costume</p> <p>A dining room</p>
<p><u>Proper adjectives</u></p> <p><u>Country/people</u></p> <p>Afghanistan, Afghans</p> <p>America, Americans</p>	<p><u>Adjective</u></p> <p>Afghan</p> <p>American</p>

Africa, African, Africans	African
Argentina, Argentines	Argentine
Australia, Australians	Australians
Belgium, Belgians	Belgian
Benin, Beninese	Beninese
Botswana, Botswanans	Botswanan
Brazil, Brazilians	Brazilian
Britain, British	British
Bulgaria, Bulgarians	Bulgarian
Burkina Faso, Burkinabe	Burkinabe
Burma/Myanmar, Burmese	Burmese
Burundi, Burundians	Burundian
Cambodia, Cambodians	Cambodian
Canada, Canadians	Canadian
Cape Verde, Cape Verdeans	Cape Verdean
Chad, Chadians	Chadian
Chile, Chileans	Chilean
China, Chinese	Chinese
Colombia, Colombians	Colombian
Comoros, Comorans	Comoran
Congo, Congolese	Congolese
Costa Rica, Costa Ricans	Costa Rican
Croatia, Croatians	Croatian
Cuba, Cubans	Cuban
Czech Republic, Czechs	Czech

Cyprus, Cypriots	Cypriot
Denmark, Danes	Danish
Djibouti, Djiboutians	Djiboutian
Ecuador, Ecuadorians	Ecuadorian
Egypt, Egyptians	Egyptian
UAE, Emirates	Emirati
England, English	English
E. Guinea, Equatorial Guineans	Equatorial Guinean
Eritrea, Eritreans	Eritrean
Estonia, Estonians	Estonian
Ethiopia, Ethiopians	Ethiopian
Fiji, Fijians	Fijian
Filipine, Filipinos	Filipino
Finland, Finnish	Finnish
France, French	French
Gabon, Gabonese	Gabonese
Germany, Germans	German
Ghana, Ghanaians	Ghanaian
Greece, Greeks	Greek
Greenland, Greenlanders	Greenlandic
Guinea, Guineans	Guinean
Haiti, Haitians	Haitian
Hungary, Hungarians	Hungarian
Holland/Netherlands, Dutch	Dutch
Iceland, Icelanders	Icelandic

Iran, Iranians	Iranian
Iraq, Iraqis	Iraqi
Israel, Israeli	Israeli
Italy, Italians	Italian
Ivory Coast, Ivorians	Ivorian
Jamaica, Jamaicans	Jamaican
Japan, Japanese	Japanese
Jordan, Jordanians	Jordanian
Kazakhstan, Kazakhstani	Kazakh
Kenya, Kenyans	Kenyan
Kosovo, Kosovans	Kosovan
Kuwait, Kuwaitis	Kuwaiti
Liberia, Liberians	Liberian
Lebanon, Lebanese	Lebanese
Lesotho, Lesothans	Lesothan
Libya, Libyans	Libyans
Luxembourg, Luxembourgers	Luxembourg
Mexico, Mexicans	Mexican
Madagascar, Madagascan	Malagasy
Mali, Malians	Malian
Malta, Maltese	Maltese
Mozambique, Mozambican	Mozambican
Nepal, Nepalese	Nepalese
Niger, Nigeriens	Nigerien
Nigeria, Nigerians	Nigerian

Oman, Omanis	Omani
Pakistan, Pakistani	Pakistani
Palestine, Palestinians	Palestinian
Peru, Peruvian	Peruvian
Poland, Pole	Polish
Qatar, Qataris	Qatari
Russia, Russians	Russian
Rwanda, Rwandans	Rwandan
Saudi Arabia, Saudi Arabians	Saudi Arabian
Seychelles, Seychellois	Seychellois
Scotland, Scot	Scottish
Singapore, Singaporeans	Singaporean
Slovenia, Slovenians	Slovenian
Somalia, Somalis	Somali
South Sudan, South Sudanese	South Sudanese
Spain, Spaniards	Spanish
Swaziland,	Swazi
Taiwan, Taiwanese	Taiwanese
Tanzania, Tanzanians	Tanzanian
Togo, Togolese	Togolese
Tunisia, Tunisians	Tunisian
Turkey, Turks	Turkish
Uganda, Ugandans	Ugandan
Venezuela, Venezuelans	Venezuelan
Vietnam, Vietnamese	Vietnamese

Wales, Welsh	Welsh
Yemen, Yemenis	Yemeni
Zambia, Zambians	Zambian
Zimbabwe, Zimbabweans	Zimbabwean

Fill the blank space with the correct form of the word in the brackets.

Activity I

1. This is one of _____ cities in the world. (**beautiful**)
2. Our trip to Kidepo was _____. (**enjoy**)
3. Eria plays quite well but Martin is - _____ player in the team. (**good**)
4. _____ babies die of malaria than any other disease. (**Many**)
5. _____ birds can fly, but not all. (**Many**)
6. She doesn't like _____ children. (**trouble**)
7. Which of these people is _____. (**important**)?
8. I shall buy the car that goes _____. (**fast**)
9. There was hardly any _____ food at the concert. (**delicacy**)
10. I can do _____ of the questions but not all. (**many**)
11. Joy is a _____ woman. (**talk**)
12. He is _____ person I have ever met. (**interesting**)
13. I am sure this is _____ of the two. (**good**)
14. I like _____ music. (**life**)
15. He is _____ politician in/of the country. (**skilful**)

Activity II

1. We are planning to have a very _____ holiday. (**excite**)
2. She has an _____ face. (**interest**)
3. You have a _____ dog. (**friendly**)
4. Of the two girls, Jane is the _____. (**bright**)
5. Your knife is _____ than mine. (**sharp**)
6. You should be _____ than yesterday. (**careful**)
7. Are you _____ today? (well)
8. Mapeera is the _____ building on Kampala road. (**tall**)
9. I am _____ concerned in this matter. (**little**)
10. What is the _____ news? (**late**)
11. The _____ she walked, the farther she reached. (**long**)
12. Can I have _____ tea, please? (**heat**)
13. This is _____ book. (**me**)
14. Jacob is a _____ boy. (**love**)
15. That is a _____ switch. (**fault**)
16. Samson is the _____ man. (**strong**)
17. The Nile is _____ than the Mississippi. (**long**)
18. Of the three roads, the first one is the _____. (**busy**)

16. One should be _____ in class.
(attend)
17. Of the two girls, Cynthia is the
_____. (beautiful)
18. A road is _____ than a lane. (busy)
19. Jane is _____ than her sister.
(intelligent)
20. Of the twins, Wasswa is the
_____. (tall)
21. The students had an ____ tour at the Nile.
(educate)
22. The game was marred by the behaviour of
_____ fans. (drink)
23. Tesa disposed of the mask because it was
_____. (use)
24. You must be ____ to God. (gratitude)
25. Arsenal played a _____ game yesterday.
(fantasy)
26. Of the twins, Jennifer is the _____. (little)
27. We finished the test in ____ than two hours.
(little)
28. No one is _____ than I am about what
happened. (sorry)
29. It is ____ to travel by air. (expense)
19. I received a letter from my _____
daughter. (affection)
20. You should be _____ in class.
(attend)
21. She has just won a _____. (gold)
22. Susan spent a week in Paris, the _____ capital.
(France)
23. Hard work made him a _____ man. (succeed)
24. The bitch gave birth to the ____ puppy.
(three)
25. A great welcome awaited Solzhenitsyn, the
_____ writer. (Germany)
26. The bitch has given birth to ____ puppies.
(three)
27. Colin is the _____ of the triplets. (naughty)
28. Baby Cool is a ____ musician. (celebrate)
29. The oak is a ____ tree than the poplar. (shady)
30. I read a _____ story about pirates. (thrill)

DOUBLE COMPARATIVES

This structure uses the comparative degree of adjectives or sometimes the comparative degree of adverbs.

NB: Use a comma before the second *the*.

Consider:

- (a) The man has so many words. His lesson will take long.
The more words the man has, the longer his lesson will take.
- (b) Your goods are not important. They will sell cheap.
The less important your goods are, the cheaper they will sell.
- (c) The driver is rough. He cannot get many passengers.
The rougher the driver is, the less passengers he can get.

- (a) The motorist drove quickly. His passengers became worried.
The more quickly the motorist drove, the more worried his passengers became.
- (b) The farmer dug hurriedly. The farmer got tired.
The more hurriedly the farmer dug, the more tired he got.
- (c) She walked deep and deep into the forest. The forest became dark and dark.
The deeper she walked into the forest, the darker it became.
- (d) The teacher took time to explain the concept. The pupils became happy and jolly.
The more time the teacher took to explain the concept, the happier and jollier the pupils became.

Join each of the following pairs beginning: The...

Activity I

1. She takes many subjects. She will have many hours of study.
2. The more books one reads, the more knowledgeable one becomes. (Begin: If one ...)
3. The more information pupils learn from newspapers, the brighter they become. (Begin: As pupils learn a lot ...)
4. The less food Naiga ate, the weaker she became. (Begin: Naiga became very ...)
5. We eat good food. We grow healthy.
6. The more advice teachers give to learners, the better they behave. (Begin: When teachers)
7. He read many books. He became wise.
8. You are friendly. You will become successful in life.
9. When you save much money, you become happy.
10. She ate little food. She became thin.
11. If she doesn't spend much money, she saves a lot of it.
12. The more physical exercises we do, the healthier we become. (Begin: If we do ...)
13. I feel good whenever the weather is warm. (Begin: The ...)

Activity II

21. As we live long on earth, we enjoy good things.
22. As pupils learn a lot of information from newspapers, they become very bright.
23. When teachers give a lot of advice to their learners, they behave well.
24. We added a lot of water and the soup became tasteless.
25. When people become rich, they take their children to good schools.
26. The master of ceremonies spoke a lot. The mourners paid little attention.
27. If you stand far, you become small.
28. We did a lot of practice. We got good results.
29. If you eat plenty of fresh fruit and vegetables, you will keep healthy. (Begin: The more ...)
30. One becomes healthy when one eats a lot of nutritious food. (Begin: The more ...)
31. Joel drove faster and faster and lost much control. (Begin: The faster ...)
32. You go high. It becomes cool. (Begin: The ... the ...)
33. The harder they work, the richer they will be. (Rewrite as two sentences)
34. Henry comes early. He will be busy. (Begin: The ... the ...)

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>14. As Musa ran fast, he became tired. (Begin: The ...)</p> <p>15. You will delay on the way if the traffic jam is tight.</p> <p>16. As Ian ran fast, he became tired. (Begin: The ...)</p> <p>17. They dug deep and deep. The pit became dark and dark. (Begin: The ...)</p> <p>18. In order to get good grades at school, we need to work hard.</p> <p>19. As one gets close to registration, one gets serious.</p> <p>20. The carpenter varnished the wood well. The wood became bright and nice. (Begin: The ...)</p> | <p>35. Dorcus ran very fast. She finished quickly. (Begin: The ... the ...)</p> <p>36. Vehicles can overtake easily when the road is wide. (Begin: The ...)</p> <p>37. We walked long. We reached far. (Begin: The ...)</p> <p>38. She comes early. She will be busy.</p> <p>39. The taller my sister grew, the shorter her skirt became. (Begin: My sister ...)</p> <p>40. The flyer became clear as we moved close to it. (Begin: The ...)</p> |
|---|--|

ORDER OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives can be put in their correct order using the NOPSASCOMPEN formula:

N – Number (one, three, second, etc.)

O – Opinion (e.g. beautiful, careful, shabby, polite, etc.)

S – Size/height (e.g. big, fat, thin, slender, heavy, tall, short, high, little, low, towering, etc.)

A – Age (e.g. middle – aged, modern, outdated, ancient, current, new, old, young, old-fashioned, etc.)

S – shape (e.g. circular, triangular, square, oval, flat, cylindrical, etc.)

C – Colour (e.g. dark, black, white, yellow, chocolate, dark-skinned, light-skinned, etc.)

O – Origin (e.g. Chinese, Ugandan, Rwandese, French, English, African, Ateso, etc.)

M – Material (e.g. wooden, woollen, cotton, glassy, metallic, plastic, leather, nylon, etc.)

P – Purpose/use (e.g. dining, swimming, measuring, watering, bridal, skating, etc.)

N – Noun (e.g. table, girl, spoon, room, etc.)

Consider:

- (a) I met a girl. She was young. She was pretty. She was dark. She was from Italy.

I met a pretty young dark Italian girl.

- (b) They had a meeting. The meeting lasted for two hours. It was colourful.
They had a colourful two-hour meeting.

- (c) Sarah bought a twenty-page book. It was for sports. It was new and interesting.
Sarah bought an interesting twenty-page new sports book.

- (d) Anita is getting married to a prince. The prince is tall. The prince is handsome. The prince is from Holland.
Anita is getting married to a handsome tall Dutch prince.

- (e) My car was stolen by a (thin, ugly, old, light-skinned) man.
My car was stolen by an ugly thin old dark-skinned man.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items without using who, which or and.

1. The thief was a (woman, short, beautiful, elderly, dark-skinned)
2. We had a tour. The tour was wonderful. It lasted for six hours. (Use ...a six)
3. The (young, stubborn, small) boy ran away with the old woman's bag.
4. There was an advert on Bukedde TV. The advert lasted for thirty seconds. (Use ...a thirty ...)
5. The handcuffs are black. They are old-fashioned. They are strong.
6. My father hung a calendar on the wall. The calendar lasted for twelve months. (Use.a twelve ...)
7. The culprit is chocolate. He is from Japan. He is fat.
8. A drought lasted for ten months. It adversely affected the livelihood of the farmers. (Begin: A – twelve)

Activity II

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. They sent a team of five doctors to Kalangala. (Use....**a five**....)
2. I have a trolley. The trolley is two feet high. (Use...**a two**...)
3. The coach has selected a team of eleven players. (Use...**an eleven**...)
4. The Karimajong sit on stools that have two legs. (Use...**two-legged**...)
5. She attended a workshop. The workshop took three days.
6. Driving from Kampala to Mbarara takes three hours. (Begin: It is a)
7. It was a race of four hours. (End ...race.)
8. We saw a lion that climbs trees. (Endlion.)
9. I caught an insect with four wings. ((Begin: I caught a four)
10. She read a magazine of ninety-nine pages. (Endmagazine.
11. We had a lesson. The lesson took three hours. (Endlesson.)

9. My father is tall. He is intelligent. He is brown.
10. The bride and groom signed a mortgage on their dream home. The mortgage was for thirty years. (Use ...a thirty ...)
11. I sat at a table. It was new. It was huge. It was from Kenya.
12. Our bedroom is small. It is clean. It is dark.
13. Indiana is ugly. She is from Ateso. She is old.
14. Mr. Smith is light-skinned. He is tall. He comes from England.
15. She bought four books. They were black. They were interesting.
16. We shall write long compositions. They are four compositions. They are interesting compositions.
17. Reagan bought a sewing machine. The sewing machine is blue. It is very big and expensive.
18. My cousin bought a blanket made of wool. It was large. It was new. It was nice-looking.
19. The silly boy pulled the tail. It was a big tail. It was black.
20. I bought a table. It was made of wood. It was from China. It was expensive. It was a dining table.
21. They met a stranger. He was very tall. He had thin legs. He was blind. He was from Madagascar.
22. My father built a house of two bedrooms. ((Use ... a two ...)
12. The inspector led a delegation to Kasese. The delegation comprised ten teachers.((Usea ten....)
13. She has a string. The string is seven metres long. (Usea seven)
14. Coca Cola has put an advert on TV. The advert lasts for thirty seconds. (End .. .advert.)
15. They had a tour. The tour lasted for two hours. It was a wonderful tour. (Usea two...)
16. The couples have signed a mortgage on their dream home. The mortgage will last for three decades. (Usea three)
17. A drought lasted for nine months. It affected the livelihoods of farmers. (Use ...a nine ...)
18. Our class teacher bought a wall calendar. The calendar will last for twelve months.
19. The baker made a cake. The cake has three tiers.
20. We had a discussion. The discussion lasted only eight minutes.
21. I have a ball. It is circular and very nice.

AS...AS

This is used in comparison. At times, it goes with *not*.

Consider:

- (a) Nabwire is seven metres tall. Lumbuye is six metres tall.
Lumbuye is not as tall as Nabwire.
- (b) A book is important. A pen is important.

A book is as important as a pen.

A book, as well as a pen, is important.

- (c) Kato beats Kakuru in intelligence.

Kakuru is not as intelligent as Kato.

- (d) Both a peacock and a peahen are pretty.

A peacock is as pretty as a peahen.

A peacock, as well as a peahen, is pretty.

- (e) My mother is a good cook. My little sister is a good cook.

My mother is as good a cook as my little sister.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items usingas...as...

1. The teacher was happy. The pupil was happy.
2. The woman is very stingy. The man is not so stingy.
3. The father is wiser. The son is wise.
4. Sugar is sweet. Honey is very sweet.
5. The maid of honour and the best man are equally smart.
6. A dictionary is a voluminous book. An atlas is a voluminous book.
7. My ruler is one metre long. Your ruler is one metre long.
8. A bag of cement is fifty kilos. A bag of maize flour is twenty-five kilos.
9. A kitten is playful. A puppy is playful.
10. Cathy is five years old. Rita is six years old.
11. Peter is twenty-one years old. Sarah is thirty years old.
12. Weaverbirds are very talkative. Okapis are very talkative.
13. A lion is a lethal animal. A leopard is a lethal animal.
14. Our teacher speaks English very well. She also speaks Runyankore very well.
15. An elephant is a huge animal. A hippo is a huge animal.
16. Both Bright and Clever are wise.
17. A motorcycle is more useful than a bicycle.
18. Noah is faster than Joel.
19. Samuel was short. Samson was very short.
20. Amos is not as handsome as Abdullah.
21. Karen weighs 30 kg and her brother weighs 20 kg.

PREPOSITIONS

A preposition is placed before a noun or pronoun to indicate position of a word in a sentence.

Kinds of prepositions

(a) SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS

These are short and consist of only one word, e.g.

At	near	amongst
in	opposite	towards
into	over	up
inside	below	upon
on	for	under
onto	to	underneath
with	against	by
without	past	beyond
within	among	outside
between	until	through
		throughout

(b) COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS

apart from	angry with	as soon as
suffering from	charged with	break up for
prevent from	quarrel with	apologise for
borrow from	joke with	excuse for
desist from	satisfy with	apply for
abstain from	Begin with	die for
absent from	envious with	fit for
differ from	familiar with	respect for
free from	dance with	ask for
aloof from	walk with	famous for
escape from	equip with	grateful for
. apparent from(st	play with	wait for
Dissociate from	agree with	sorry for
	disappointed in	arrested for

54.banfrom	interested in	23.anxious..... For(sb)
124.desist..... From	congratulate upon	appetite..... For
126. 127.deviate..... From	congratulate on	bound..... For
131.different..... From/to/than	according to	62. aptitude..... For
136.dissent.....from	apologise to	45.atone..... For.
152.escape..... From	faithful to	bound..... For
158.exemption...From	junior to	69.concern..... for
175.free.....from/of	refer to	70.carefu.....about/for
214.infer.....from	similar to	80.compassion..... For
283.prevent..... From	reply to	82.compensation..... For
286.prohibit.....from	welcome to	100.contempt..... For
298.recover(v).....from	apply to	102.contend.....for(=to compete against sb in order to gain sth)
299.recovery(n)...from	inferior to	115.cure(n).....for
314.resign..... From	sentenced to	Die.....for(=purpose)
355.withdraw.....from	point to	Eg:person died for country/organization.
332.suffer.....from	deaf to	141.eager..... For
266.part.....from(=leave sb)	invite to	142.eligible..... For
59.benefit.....by/from	listen to	145.enthusiasm..... For/about
sick of	add to	156.excuse..... (Sb) for (sth)=forgive
suspected of	cruel to	157.excuse..... For (=reason)
in view of	attend to	165.famous..... For
instead of	grateful to	166.fearful..... For (sb)
in spite of	19.alternato	153.essential... To/for
because of	with reference to	196.hope..... For
die of	attribute to	
independent of	lend to	
jealous of	accustomed to	
	used to	
	heed to	

fond of	prefer to	212.indispensable..... For(doing sth)
as of	point to	
afraid of	manage to	241.liable..... For(=legally responsible for paying the cost of)
ashamed of	owing to	
consist of	talk to	246.lust.....for
full of	detrimental..... To	251.mourn..... For
advantage..... over (sb) of (sth)		253.need/necessity....For
proud of	33.appoint.....(sb)to(sth)	256.notorious..... For
accused of	apply..... To(sb)for(sth)	269.partially...For(sth)
on top of	35.appropriate... To/for	270.passion.....for
sure of	.aspire.....to	295.ready..... For
on account of	40.assent.....to	56.bad...for(=harmful)
out of	attached.....to	172.fit/unfit.....For
36.approve.....of	47.attend.....to	174.fondness..... For
38.ashamed..... Of	averse.....to	180.glad.....about (=happy)
43.assure.....of	58.beneficial..... To	290.provide.....(sth)fo(sb)
61.boast.....of	78.compare.....to(=to show likeliness)	341.thankful ...for(sth)
68.capable..... Of	63.burden(n)..... To	343.thirst/hunger/desire.....For
97. 98.consist.....of	claim.....on/to	280.pretext.....for
125.destitute.....of	conducive..... To	244.longing (n)/long(v).....for
128.devoid..... Of	92.conform.....To	264.opportunity.....for(sb/sth)
338.suspect.....(sb/sth)of(sth)	congenial..... To	265.opportunity.....for/of(doing sth)
202.ignorant..... About/of	consent..... To	277.pray.....to(sb)for(sth)
.dispose.....of	104.contrary.....to	184.good.....for(=suitable) convenient
135.die.....of	close.....to	111.convenient..... For(sb/sth)
148.envious/jealous.....Of	complain....to(sb)about/of(sth)	
167.fearful..... Of(sth)		

173.fond.....of	engaged..... To(sb)=having	62. aptitude..... For
177.full.....of	alternative to	5760.blame.....(sb/sth)for(sth).
191.guilty..... Of(=having done sth illegal)	entitle/entitlement.....To	67.campaign..... Against/for
197.hope.....for/of	257.obedient..... To	306.remorse..... For
198.hopeful..... About/of	harmful/injurious.....To	307.request.....for
200.habit.....of(doing sth)	193.heir.....to (sth)	310.responsible.....for (sth)
203.impact..... Of(sb)on(sth/sb)	194.heir.....of (sb)	315.search..... For
207.impression..... Of(sth)	.hostile..... To	316.seek.....for
209.independent... Of	210.indifferent/callous.....to	351.venue..... For
231.irrespective..... Of	211.indispensable..... To(sb/sth)	352.wait.....for
235.lack.....of	230.irrelevant..... To	362.yearn.....for
255.nervous...About/of	239.lead.....to	363.yearning..... For
288.proud..... Of	248.married.....to	204.impose..... On
305.remind.....of	263.open..... To(sb/sth)	220.insist.....on
312.rid.....of	268.partial..... To	221.insistence. For.....on
313.rob.....of	271.pertain.....to	206.impression..... On(sb)
339.suspicious..... Of	275.pleasing..... To	233.keen.....on
345.tired..... Of	279.preferable..... To	247 .march.....on
346.stick..... Of	285.prior..... To	250.meditate/concentrate.....on
353.want.....of	287.prone..... To	281.prevail.....on(=persuade)
358.worthy..... Of	296.reconcile..... To(sth)	304.rely.....on
rob of	300.refer..... To	309.resolve.....on
113.convict..... (Sb)of(sth)	301.reference..... To	324.spend.....on
tired of	303.related..... To	354.waste.....on(sth)
4950. 51.avail.....(oneself)of(sth)	308.resemblance... To	364.yield..... On
114.cure(v).....(sb)of(sth)	311.restricted..... To	

123.deprive.....(sb/sth)of(sth) Eg:person died of accident. 181.glad.....of(=greatful) 217.inform..... Of 320.short.....of in place of arrive at glance at point at mad at 4144.astonished..... At 4144.astonished..... At 106.connive.....at/in(sth) 149.envy.....at 154.excel.....at/in 176.frightened..... At 182.glance..... At 187.grief..... At/over 195.hint.....at 238.laugh..... At 245.look/stare/gaze.....at 249.marvel.....at 302.rejoice..... At/over 357.wonder..... At(=be surprised)337.surprised/shocked....At 322.smile/sneer/giggle...At 252.nag.....at	317.senior/junior.....To 318.sensitive..... To/about 319.sequel.....to 321.similar..... To 325.stick..... To(=to continue doing sth despite difficulties) 326.subject..... To 327.submission.....to 331.succumb.....to 333.superior/inferior.....to 334.supplement..... To 335.supply..... (Sth)to (sb) 342.thankful..... To(sb) 365. true.....to 349.used.....to yield.....to parallel to approach.....to akin.....to acclimatize..... To apparent.... To(sb) appeal..... To(sb)for(sth) accustomed..... to addicted..... to adhere..... to 258.object/objection.....to	authority..... On(=expert) 52. 53.ban(n).....On 66.bearing..... On 71. 94. 95.congratulate..... (Sb)on(sth) 216.influence..... On/upon(=effect) 77.comment.....on 84.compliment..... On 122.depend...On/upon 137.dote..... On/upon 160.encroach.....on/upon 168.feed/live.....on(=eat) abideby marred by jump over .authority.....Over(=power) 105.control..... Over 116.concern(n...about/for/over. 117.concerned (adj).....about/for/over(=worried) 188.grieve.....for/over 215.influence..... Over(=control) 282.prevail.....over(=defeat)
---	--	---

183.good.....at(=able to do sth well)skillful 55.bad.....at(not good at) knock at good at look at aim at smile at mock at laugh at 22.angry.....at/about(sth) amazed at at length reach the believe in succeed in absorbed in down with differ with fill with dance with equip with play with 119.deal.....in(=trade) appropriate action). 86.believe.....in . 87.confide....in(=trust) 89.confidence.....In	240.leave.....for(a place)=go to 164.faithful..... To 155.exception..... To 150. 151.equal..... To 159.expose.....(sth)to (sb) 129.differ..... ..from(sb/sth)=to be different from sb/sth 96.connect.....(sth)to(sth) 88.confide.....to(=tell) 90. 91.confined..... (Sb/sth)to(sth) 234.kind/cruel.....to 242.liable..... To(=likely to be punished by law for) 243.listen..... To 260.obliged..... To(sb)for (sth) 186.greatful.....to(sb)for(sth) 278.prefer..... (Sb/sth)to(sb/sth) 147.entrust.....(sth)to(sb) admit.....to/into agree..... To(proposal) 359.write..... (Sth)to(sb) 360.write..... In(ink/pencil) 361.write..... With(a pen)	350.victory..... Over/against. 237.lament.....over 189.guard.....Against 108. 109. 110.crash.....into walk with accomplice.....with agree..... With(a person) about/on sth afflicted....., With 21.angry....with/at(sb) 64.associate.....with .burden(v).....with 65.busy.....with 72.charge..... With 75.collide.....with 76.Collude.....with(sb)in(sth) 81.compatible..... With 83.compliance.... With 85.comply..... With 93.conformity..... With 99.contemporary..... With 101.contend..... With(=to have to 103.content.....with 107.connive...with(sb) 112.converse..... With
--	---	--

121.delight.....in		120.deal.....with(=to take
139.drenched..... In/with		130.differ...with(sb)
140.decline..... In/of	lean against	about/on/over(sth)=to disagree with sb
143.engaged..... In/on(sth)=busy doing sth	by car/ bicycle/train/plane	132.disgusted..... At/by/with
162.fail.in	on a bicycle	133.dispense..... With
163.faith..... In	in my/his car/train	Die.....with(=disease)
171.fill.....in(sth)	138.double (n)/doubtful (adj).....about	Eg: person died with cancer
225.interested..... In	134.confident.... Of/about	146.entrust.....(sb)with(sth)
226.interfere..... In(=get involved)	178.fuss...about/over	169.fight..... With(sb)about/for (sth)
228.invest.....in	With(sb)over(sth)	170.fill(sth)with(sth).
229.involved.....in	291.pessimistic..... About	179.fed up.....with
232.meddle..... In	323.sorry.....about/for	185.grapple..... With
236.lacking.....in	292.positive.....About	201.identical..... With
254.negligent..... In	293.quarrel.....About(sth)	208.impressed...with/by
272.persist....in(doing sth)	262.obsessive... About	213.infected..... With
273.persist.....in/with(sth)	218.inquiry.....about/into	222.interact..... With
284.pride..... In	190.guilty..... About	223.interaction..... With (sb/sth)
329.succeed..... In	(=feeling ashamed because you have done sth that you know is wrong)	227.interfere..... With(=prevent)
330.succession.....in	anxious..... About (sth)	259.oblige.....(sb)with(sth)
	caution..... About/against	261.obsession....with
	69.concern..... For/about	267.part.....with(=to give sth to sb else)
		274.pleased.....With
		276.popular..... With
		294.quarrel.... With(sb)
		340.sympathize...with(sb/sth)

		344.threaten.....(sb)with(sth) 347.tremble..... With 328.suffuse.....with 336.supply.....(sb)with(sth) 297.reconcile..... (Sth)with(sth) 205.impress..... (Sb) with(sth) 118.concerned (adj).....about/with(=interested in) 289.provide..... (Sb)with(sth) deal with a problem or difficult situation)
--	--	---

These are long and consist of more than one word, e.g.

Activity I

Complete each of the following items using a suitable word.

1. I used _____ cry for food when I was a baby.
2. Our grandparents used to travel _____ foot.
3. Jesus was born _____ the Virgin Mary.
4. The motorist was driving _____ top speed.
5. She is suffering _____ malaria.
6. Andrew is down _____ fever.
7. We were seated _____ the table.
8. She is accustomed _____ eating alone.
9. Amina is leaning _____ the wet paint.
10. They used to ride _____ horseback.
11. You came to school _____ car.
12. According _____ scientists, TB is a bacterial disease.
13. In spite _____ its limited popularity in USA, football is the most popular sports in the world.

14. I sat next _____ my mother.
15. The cat hid _____ the table.
16. Many Ugandans have been robbed _____ their land.
17. All the candidates will pass _____ first grade.
18. Monkeys are fond _____ bananas.
19. She has not written to her friend _____ two years.
20. The letter was written _____ ink.

Activity II

1. Papyrus is used _____ making mats.
2. The news was read _____ WamalaBalunaba.
3. My aunt gave birth _____ twins.
4. They sat _____ a table and had lunch.
5. She sat _____ the chair.
6. Timothy shared the sweets _____ the twins.
7. The bread was shared _____ the triplets.
8. My uncle prevented me _____ joining the army.
9. I stepped on the child's toy _____ accident.
10. He listened _____ the news on the radio.
11. We were asked to point _____ the sun.
12. Look _____ the word in the dictionary.
13. The children prefer watching cartoons _____ watching the news.
14. The girl is standing in front _____ the building.
15. The stranger was accused _____ theft.
16. Babies depend _____ their mothers breast milk.
17. We sat _____ a tree after jogging.
18. They may break _____ for holidays this week.
19. I did not agree _____ your opinion.
20. Candidates should rely _____ their own efforts.

Activity III

1. The dog barked _____ the passers-by.
2. The thief was gunned _____ by the askar.
3. She looks forward _____ getting a promotion.
4. Dad looks _____ many children.
5. The bridegroom arrived _____ the reception in time.
6. The students walked to the market _____ foot.
7. I am looking _____ my pen.
8. The police succeeded _____ finding the lost child.
9. Rita was knocked _____ by the speeding car.
10. A panga is used _____ cutting grass.
11. She is fond _____ reading stories.
12. The boy managed _____ climb the hill.
13. Many people have died _____ AIDS.
14. What is the time _____ your watch?
15. None _____ the boys was shabby.
16. Sophia travelled _____ train to Busega.

17. The president talked _____ length in his annual speech.
18. The criminal escaped _____ prison.
19. The rapist was sentenced _____ lifeimprisonment.
20. What is the time _____ your watch?

Activity IV

1. She was sitting ____ her desk.
2. She sat ____ a chair.
3. She sat ____ an armchair.
4. She sat ____ the floor.
5. She sat ____ the step.
6. She sat ____ a table.
7. She sat ____ a bench.
8. She sat ____ the tree.
9. She sat ____ the shade.
10. She sat ____ the sun

1. She talked _____ length in her speech.
2. The criminal escaped _____ prison.
3. John goes to school ____ car.
4. John goes to school ____ his father's car
5. The game was marred ____ the behaviour of the drunken fans.
6. The air was filled ____ dust.
7. The old man was attacked _____ thieves.
8. My friend and I sit ____ the same desk.
- 9.

ADVERBS

An adverb is a word that adds more information about a verb. Adverbs may at times modify adjectives and other adverbs.

TYPES OF ADVERBS

(a) Adverbs of degree

These answer the question, to what extent?

Examples

- Quite
- Very
- Almost
- Barely
- Entirely
- Highly
- Slightly
- Totally
- Utterly
- Especially
- Unusually
- Really
- Partly
- Enough

Adverbs of time

These answer the question, when?

Examples

- soon
- today
- every day
- yesterday
- yesteryear
- tomorrow
- tonight
- Later
- Yet
- Now

(b) Adverbs of manner

These answer the question, how?

Examples

Poorly

Slowly

Fluently

Fast

(c) Adverbs of place

These answer the question, where?

Examples

- There
- Here
- Inside
- Outside
- Above
- Below
- Far
- Away
- Nearby
- Upstairs
- Downstairs

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

Word	Adverb	Word	Adverb
(a) Add ly		(b) Change y to ily	
abrupt	abruptly	- angry	angrily
	absurdly	- body	bodily
	accurately	- breezy	breezily
	alphabetically	- busy	busily
	amusingly	- cheery	cheerily
	annually	- clumsy	clumsily
	anxiously	- cozy	cozily
	ashamedly	- crafty	craftily
	attentively	- crazy	crazily
		- day	
		- dizzy	
		- dreamy	
		- easy	
		- energy	
		- faulty	
		- funny	
		- greedy	
		- guilty	
		- happy	

attractively	- hasty	daily
awkwardly	- hungry	dizzily
awesomely	- hearty	dreamily
barely	- heavy	easily
bravely	- involuntary	energetically
belatedly	- lazy	faultily
beautifully	- lucky	funnily
boldly	- mercy	greedily
briefly	- merry	guiltily
brightly	- military	happily
broadly	- noisy	hastily
brutally	- ordinary	hungrily
calmly	- primary	heartily
candidly	- ready	heavily
carefully	- necessary	involuntarily
carelessly	- noisy	lazily
cheaply	- shabby	luckily
cheerfully	- sleepy	mercifully/mercilessly
clearly	- steady	merrily
cleverly	- stealthy	militarily
coldly	- temporary	noisily
commonly	- thirsty	ordinarily
compatibly	- tidy	primarily
competitively	- ugly	readily
completely	- uneasy	necessarily
	- voluntary	
	- weary	

	confidently		noisily
	continuously		shabbily
	courageously		sleepily
	cowardly		steadily
	critically		stealthily
	crossly		temporarily
	cruelly		thirstily
	dangerously		tidily
	decisively		uglily
	directly		uneasily
	educationally		voluntarily
	eagerly	(c) Change e to -ly	wearily
	earnestly	- able	
	eastwardly	- capable	
	effortlessly	- comfortable	
	equally	- deniable	ably
	exceptionally	- due	capably
	excessively	- eligible	comfortably
	excitingly	- enjoyable	deniably
	excitedly	- fashionable	duly
	extremely	- gentle	eligibly
	evidently	- humble	enjoyably
	faithfully	- horrible	fashionably
	fairly	- idle	gently
	freely	- incredible	humbly
		- justifiable	horribly
		- knowledge	idly
		- noble	
		- possible	
		- probable	
		- reliable	
		- responsible	
		- reversible	
		- sensible	
		- simple	
		- suitable	
		- strange	
		- terrible	

	frighteningly	- true	incredibly
	forcefully	- valuable	justifiably
	fondly		knowledgeably
	frequently		nobly
	gladly		possibly
	gratefully		probably
	harmfully		reliably
	harmoniously		responsibly
	harshly		reversibly
	highly		sensibly
	honestly		simply
	hopefully		suitably
	hopelessly		terribly
	ignorantly		truly
	illegally	(d) Use the past	valuably
	immediately	simple + -ly	
	intentionally	- acknowledge	
	kindly	- admit	acknowledgedly
	knowingly	- allege	admittedly
	likely	- amaze	allegedly
	locally	- assure	amazedly
	loudly	- bless	assuredly
	lovingly	- decide	blessedly
	madly	- delight	decidedly
	mainly	- deserve	delightedly
		- disgust	
		- excite	
		- expect	
		- hurry	
		- repeat	
		- report	
		-	
		- wicked	
		- worry	

	mentally		deservedly
	narrowly		disgustedly
	naturally		excitedly
	nicely		expectedly
	obediently		hurriedly
	occasionally		repeatedly
	oddly		reportedly
	partly		undoubtedly
	patiently	(e) Don't change	wickedly
	peacefully	- fast	worriedly
	pitifully	- hard	
	poorly	- well	fast
	proudly	- late	hard
	practically	- early	well
	predictably	- long	late
	presumably	- high	early
	productively	- low	long
	protectively	- deep	high
	quickly	- near	low
	quietly	(f) Add ally to	deep
	questioningly	word that end	near
	rapidly	in -ic	
	rarely	- academic	academically
	really	- arithmetic	arithmetically
	recently	- artistic	
		- basic	
		- domestic	
		- economic	
		- geometric	
		- ironic	

	recklessly	- magic	artistically
	restlessly	- realistic	basically
	sadly	- strategic	domestically
	safely	- tragic	economically
	secondly	However, public is an exception.	geometrically
	separately	- public	ironically
	seriously		magically
	shrewdly		realistically
	slyly		strategically
	sincerely		tragically
	skilfully	(g) Add -ly to words that end in -cal	publicly
	slightly	- biological	
	slowly	- chemical	
	smartly	- comical	
	softly	- grammatical	
	solely	- hysterical	
	soundly	- logical	biologically
	southwardly	- mathematical	chemically
	strangely	- medical	comically
	stupidly	- musical	grammatically
	successfully	- physical	hysterically
	sweetly	- radical	logically
	swiftly		mathematically
	thirdly		medically
	thoughtfully	(h) Some adverbs end in -wards	musically
			physically

	timidly		radically
	thankfully	- back	
	truthfully	- down	
		- east	
		-	
	totally	- fore	backwards
	unexpectedly	- up	downwards
	undoubtedly	- west	eastwards
	unusually		forward
	upwardly		upwards
	utterly		westwards
	vainly		
	vividly		
	warmly		
	wickedly		
	weakly		
	weekly		
	weirdly		
	widely		
	wildly		
	willingly		
	wisely		

Activity I

Underline adverbs in each of the following items.

- (a) She mercilessly tortured her stepson.
- (b) Chemtai quickly crossed the finishing line.
- (c) Dina was smartly dressed in her bridal gown.
- (d) The mosquitoes frequently disturb us at night.
- (e) We hurriedly ate our food.
- (f) We seldom come to school on weekends.
- (g) They often enjoy dancing.
- (h) He normally buys meat at the butcher's.
- (i) Sarah eats rice every day.
- (j) It was a heavily loaded tax.
- (k) The police bravely fought the gang.
- (l) The man is undoubtedly intelligent.
- (m) He thoughtfully spoke to the judge.
- (n) The word was repeatedly pronounced.
- (o) The police forcefully entered the building.
- (p) The sky was evidently clear.
- (q) I slept soundly despite the noise.
- (r) She ignorantly accepted to marry the stranger.
- (s) We strongly opposed the new law.
- (t) The argument was amicably settled.

Activity II

Complete each of the following items using the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. The wizard _____ assembled the computer. (success)
2. The policemen _____ guard our country. (safe)
3. Your words must be written _____ if you want to get good marks. (clear)
4. I _____ love my wife. (sincere)
5. The ship arrived _____ after a stormy voyage. (safe)
6. We sat _____ on the sofa. (comfort)
7. The girl _____ ran towards her father. (hurry)
8. The scouts and guides cleared the well _____. (voluntary)
9. My cousin was _____ injured in the accident. (bad)
10. The spectators _____ laughed at the comedian. (heart)
11. The lockdown _____ affected many businesses. (severe)
12. She is _____ to get married to the prince. (like)
13. Sandra knelt _____ before the guests. (humble)
14. Musoke drove _____ and caused the accident. (care)

15. It was a _____ letter. (friend)
16. They lived _____ with their relatives. (happy)
17. The supervisor asked us to _____ respect the invigilators. (strict)
18. It may rain _____ this season. (heavy)
19. The young mother looked _____ at her baby. (proud)
20. My grandmother _____ wove the basket. (beauty)
21. They sang the anthems very _____. (wonderful)
22. You should always speak _____. (polite)
23. The flames spread so _____ that the house was soon burnt to the ground. (quick)
24. Andrew tiptoed _____ from the room. (quiet)
25. All the boys working _____. (busy)

Activity III

1. The music was playing _____. (soft)
2. The teacher _____ solved our problem. (easy)
3. We _____ understood the lesson. (perfect)
4. _____ ask for forgiveness. (Kind)
5. The cyclist _____ escaped death. (narrow)
6. Mobile phones are sold _____ these days. (cheap)
7. Tumwine drove _____ but he didn't cause an accident. (speed)
8. She _____ left for Dubai. (pain)
9. Juliet is _____ beautiful. (striking)
10. You must learn how to write the letters _____. (proper)
11. We completed the second term _____. (success)
12. Sam _____ answered the questions. (shy)
13. He caused the accident because he was driving _____. (care)
14. The stubborn boy was _____ punished. (fair)
15. We ran out of the classroom _____ the timekeeper rang the bell. (immediate)
16. The teacher will give me a lot of marks because all my diagrams have been _____ drawn. (accuracy)
17. The carpenter has _____ made a nice chair. (skilful)
18. She speaks English _____. (fluent)
19. Why did you drive _____? (reckless)
20. The head teacher _____ shouted at us. (angry)

DEGREES OF ADVERBS

Just like adjectives, adverbs are of three degrees i.e. simple, comparative and superlative degrees. The comparative adverb compares two verb actions. The superlative adverb shows the highest degree of an action.

Comparatives and superlatives of short adverbs not ending in -ly are similar to adjectives.

Consider:

Simple degree	Competitive	Superlative
angrily	more/less angrily	most / least angrily
badly	worse	worst
beautifully	more/less beautifully	
carefully	more/less carefully	
carelessly	more/less carelessly	
cautiously	more/less cautiously	
cheap	cheaper/ more cheaply	
cheerfully	more /less cheerfully	
fast	faster	
far	farther/further	
gracefully	more/less gracefully	
gladly	more/less gladly	
happily	more/less happily	
late	later	
lightly	more/less lightly	
little	less	
loudly	more/less loudly	

naturally	more/less naturally	
often	more/less often	
recently	more/less recently	
responsibly	more/less responsibly	
sadly	more/less sadly	
seriously	more/less seriously	
slowly	more/less slowly	
strangely	more/less strangely	
thoughtfully	more/less thoughtfully	
quietly	more/less quietly	
well	better	

Activity

Complete each item using the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. My tooth was aching ____ than ever. (badly)
2. Can you repeat it _____, please? (loud)
3. Manchester United has the ____ points. (more)
4. I wish we could meet _____. (often)
5. She spoke ____ to help us understand. (slow)
6. She was asked to sing _____. (loud)
7. My mother walks ____ than my father. (quick)
8. You can buy them ____ on the internet. (cheap)
9. All the girls ran fast, but Naiga ran the _____. (fast)

10. She got up ____ than usual. (early)
11. If you want to be healthy, you should eat ____ fat. (little)
12. You can draw ____ than that. (accurately)
13. The bridegroom smiled ____ than the bride. (happy)
14. The headteacher ____ talked to the lousy boys. (angry)
15. Floods happen ____ than not. (often)
16. I find these pills work _____. (well)
17. A dog eats ____ than a cat. (hurry)
18. The sun ____ provides light and heat. (nature)
19. Who can shoot the ____? (straight)
20. How much ____ is it? (far)

ORDER OF ADVERBS

The order of adverbs is adverbs of manner (how), adverbs of place (where) and adverbs of time (when) i.e. use MPT.

Consider:

- (a) He hardly read books at home last week.
- (b) I often revise my notes on my bed.
- (c) Kennedy went to the market. He went in a hurry. He went at six o'clock.

Kennedy went hurriedly to the market at six .

NB: Hardly is an adverb of manner (how), at home is an adverb of place (where) and last week is an adverb of time (when).

Activity

Rewrite each of the sentences following the correct order adverbs.

1. The thief ate food. She ate it from the bush. She ate it hurriedly. It was in the night.
2. The man mended the shoes. He mended them on Tuesday. He mended them from the cobbler's.
3. Pupils usually eat food. They eat it at school. They eat it in a quick way. They eat it during lunch hour.

4. The school choir sang very well. They sang last Friday. They sang at the National Theatre.
5. The president spoke on 9th October, 2023. He spoke at the Boma grounds. He spoke eloquently.
6. Let's go to the party now. Let's go now. Let's go fast.
7. The train arrived late. The train arrived this morning. The train arrived at the station.
8. The baby was born in the hospital. It was born safely. It was born in November.
9. Take it there. Take it in a silent way. Take it today.
10. The mechanic repaired the vehicle well. He repaired it on Monday. He repaired at midday.
11. She spoke to us at the assembly. She spoke to us softly. She spoke to us in the morning.
12. The lorry got an accident at 7 am. The lorry got an accident at the junction. The lorry got an accident in Bwera.
13. The candidates entered the examination hall at 8 o'clock. The candidates entered the examination hall in a careful way.

POSITION OF ADVERBS

There are three possible positions in which an adverb may be placed, but the never position is very important because that is where most adverbs tend to appear.

Consider

- (a) Secretly, they were making plans.(front position)
- (b) They were secretly making plans. (never position)
- (c)They were making plans secretly. (end position)
- (d) I can never understand it. (never position)

NB: In the never position, an adverb is placed before an ordinary verb and after an auxiliary verb, etc.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. The headmistress will open the door of the classroom. (Use ... suddenly)
 2. I always write down notes in my diary. (Use often)
 3. They are building new industries. (Begin: Gradually)
 4. The candidates find the lessons difficult. (Begin: Sometimes ...)
 5. I accepted the invitation. (Endgratefully.)
 6. The boys always catch fish in the river. (Use often)
 7. The injured boy lifted his arm. (Use painfully)
 8. Babies often cry for breast milk. (Useusually)
 9. She discovered the truth of the matter. (End ... accidentally.)
 10. The carpenter smoothed the table with a plane. (Use ...skilfully ...)
 11. We always found kites amusing. (Use usually)
 12. The pupils fixed their eyes on the blackboard. (Begin: Obediently ...)
 13. Chickens are rarely allowed to wander into the house. (Useseldom)
 14. The wind was blowing the boat towards the shore. (Use ... steadily)
 15. She always wore the earrings I had given her. (Use ... usually)
 16. She usually calls at the doctor's. (Use sometimes)
 17. Pupils are seldom given free textbooks. (Use ... rarely ...)
 18. The birds have often returned to their old nests. (Usenever....)
 19. I always brush my teeth. (Use ... usually)
 20. That will be accepted. (Use ...never ...)
 21. P.7 candidates normally get up very early. (Use usually ...)
1. They usually travel to town by taxi. (Use ... often ...)
 2. Nancy comes to school late many times. (Use ... always ...)
 3. He sometimes revises his books in the morning. (Use ... usually ...)
 4. How many times do you see your parents? (Use ... often ...)
How often do you see your parents?
 5. We always eat rice at night. (Use ... seldom ...)
We seldom eat rice at night.
 6. Our teacher gives holiday work. She does it many times. (Use ... often ...)

JUST AND ALREADY

Just is mostly used with the perfect tenses, e.g. has/have/had just eaten.

Already is usually used with the present perfect tense, e.g. has) have already eaten.

Consider:

14. My aunt has just given birth to her twelfth baby.
15. She had just left.
16. I have just heard the news about her promotion.
17. We have just been telling them.
18. They have just thought of that.
19. My aunt has already given birth to her twelfth baby
20. She has already gone to the market.
21. The headmaster has already left.
22. They have already finished the carpentry course.
23. I have already eaten.
24. I have already done it.
25. The rapist has already been arrested.

Activity

Use the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. They have already _____ the bell. (ring)
2. We had just _____ about it. (hear)
3. My siblings have just _____ for England. (leave)
4. The carpenter has already _____ it. (smoothe)
5. Henry has just _____ that song. (sing)
6. The guest **has** just _____. (arrive)
7. She has just _____ telling us. (is)
8. The bride and groom have already _____ married. (get)
9. My sister has just been _____ to hospital. (admit)
10. The ball has already _____ (burst)

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

11. The nurse went to the hospital a few minutes ago. (Use ... just)
12. Kakooma began the journey a short while ago. (Use ... already ...)
13. My mother gave birth to a baby a few hours ago. (Use ... just ...)

ARTICLES

There are three articles in English i.e. a, an and the. A/an are indefinite articles while the is the only definite article in English.

<u>USING ARTICLE A</u>	<u>USING ARTICLE AN</u>	<u>USING ARTICLE THE</u>
You use a before a word that starts with a consonant:	You use an before a word that starts with a vowel:	You use the with all kinds of words, e.g.
A book	An inkpot	Generalisation:
A gun	An elephant	- The poor people don't get enough food.
A tree	An eggplant	- The affluent people live luxuriously.
A girl	An umbrella	- The oranges grow on trees.
A car	An apple	Family names:
A smile	An obvious mistake	- The Obamas
A hat	An open door	- The Akandwanahos
A hotel		- The Smiths
A helmet		- The Mulindwas
A hero	You use an before an "h" that is not pronounced:	Singular nouns:
A husband	An heir	- The sun
	An honourable	- The moon
	An hour later	- The earth
	An honest idea	- The Nile
You use a before a word that has a /y/ sound at the beginning, e.g.	An honour	- The Amazon
A Ugandan		- The Thames
A US citizen		Buildings/places/organizations
A unique school	You use an before an abbreviation that has a vowel sound at the beginning:	- The bank
A university student		- The theatre
		- The post office
		She is at the gym.

A unanimous agreement	An MP3 player	He is from the United States.
A union of traders	An SOS call	I went to the theatre last week.
A European		NB: We use the when we mention something for the second time. If you use the with a noun that you have not mentioned before, you believe that your listener knows which one you mean:
A eulogy		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I went to see a doctor but the doctor told me he was not feeling well. - Lisa has a bicycle and a car, but she uses the bicycle more often. - A thief wanted to steal my money but the money was tightly gripped. - Have you fed the cat? (You have only one cat) - I met him during the conference. - A man I work with told me about it. (You work with several men) - The man I work with told me about it. (You work with only one man)
A ewe		

Activity

Fill in the missing gaps with the correct article:

1. I would like to be engineer.
2. Mississippi is a very long river.
3. There was ____ article in the newspaper.
4. Bahima live in Ankole.
5. My father is carpenter.
6. Copper is useful metal.
7. We are going to travel around..... world.

8. A pilot uses ____ compass every day.
9. Don't look directly at sun.
10. There was ____ ewe grazing on the hillside.
11. I saw ____ European yesterday.
12. Muhammad was ____ honest man.
13. She has been waiting for over ____ hour.
14. Dalia bought ____ MP3 player.
15. ____ is a sad speech.
16. Football is ____ game.
17. Kampala is ____ city in Uganda.
18. Joe is ____ very nice person.
19. I am a ____ dentist.
20. He is ____ engineer.
21. Beethoven was ____ composer.
22. Picasso was ____ famous painter.
23. The princess has ____ horse.
24. There is ____ woman at the bus stop.
25. There was ____ interesting programme on TV.
26. The teacher spent ____ hour guiding us how to behave while in public.
27. Pauline ate ____ apple and a banana.
28. We came to ____ lake with an island in the middle.
29. Rita is spending ____ holiday with her aunt in London.
30. ____ east wind is colder than a west wind.

PARTICIPLES

A participle is a group of words which can act both as a verb and as an adjective.

Kinds

- (i) Present participles
- (j) Past participles
- (k) Perfect participles

PRESENT PARTICIPLES

These start with an *-ing* verb form. The subject of the main clause must be the same as the subject of the participle phrase.

Consider:

- (a) Maria was lying in her bed. Maria was crying.
Lying in her bed, Maria was crying.
- (b) Henry was sick. The teacher took him to the clinic.
Being sick, Henry was taken to the clinic by the teacher.
- (c) I heard very little of the lesson. I was sitting at the back.

Sitting at the back, I heard very little of the conversation.

(d) The girl wore a mini skirt. She looked ashamed before the elders.

Wearing a mini skirt, the girl looked ashamed before the elders.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. The lion came closer. The lion snatched the calf. (Begin: **Coming...**)
2. Magezi is clever. He passed the test without difficulty. (Begin: **Being...**)
3. Sophie spoke good English. Sophie was elected head girl. (Begin: **Speaking...**)
4. Kato stole bread from the cupboard. Kato's mother punished him.
5. The stranger walked along the road. The stranger saw telephone wires. (Begin: **Walking...**)
6. Arinda checked over her work. She saw several mistakes. (Begin: **Checking...**)
7. They looked out the window. They noticed it was raining. (Begin: **Looking...**)
8. The striker seemed completely useless. He was running up and down the field. (Begin: **Running...**)
9. The flag reminds us of our country. The flag flies above our heads. (Join beginning: **Flying...**)
10. The dog continued to feed its puppies. The dog growled fiercely as I came nearer. (Join beginning: **Continuing...**)

PERFECT PARTICIPLES

These begin with *having + a participle verb form*, e.g. having written, having gone, having spoken, having cleaned, etc.

Consider:

(a) Andrew was born poor. He understood the local folks.

Having been born poor, Andrew understood the local folks.

(b) She studied at college. She became a good teacher.

Having studied at college, she became a good teacher.

(c) When Mugo left school, he gave away all his books.

Having left school, Mugo gave away all his books.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following sentences beginning with: *Having...*

1. Ronald took lunch and ran to school.
2. Dancing alone, Ayesha felt unhappy.
3. Musa remembered her name. Musa wrote her a letter.
4. The stranger passed through the forest. The rest of the journey was undertaken without difficult.
5. Elizabeth failed in every subject. Elizabeth dropped out of school.
6. He tried once. He will try again.
7. The book was written. The book was ready for sale.
8. The teacher achieved success with his work. The teacher was promoted.
9. The thief made sure that nobody had seen him. The thief ran away.
10. The boy was questioned for several hours. The boy cried out.
11. The choir took their seats after singing the welcoming song.
12. After fetching some water, I washed my clothes.
13. She went to the cinema after broadcasting her morning show.
14. Mubiru posted his letter after enveloping it.
15. No sooner did the poacher see the animal than he shot at it.

PAST PARTICIPLES

These normally begin with a *passive verb*, e.g. Driven, Eaten, Broken, Taught, etc.

Consider:

- (a) They sow the crops in August. They harvest the crops in December.
Sown in August, the crops are harvested in December.
- (b) The boy was deceived by his friends. The boy lost his finger into the dog's mouth.
Deceived by his friends, the boy lost his finger into the dog's mouth.
- (c) English is the official language. English is spoken by many people in Uganda.
Being the official language, English is the spoken by many people in Uganda.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. The old man was still in the hospital. The old man was surrounded by doctors and nurses.
(Begin: **Surrounded...**)
2. The money was not discovered. The money was hidden under the carpet. (Begin: **Hidden...**)
3. The houses were washed by the floods. The houses were built of mud. (Begin: **Built...**)

4. Kirumira died recently. He was shot dead. (Begin: **Shot...**)
5. The second stone smashed the windscreen. The second stone was thrown with force. (Begin: **Thrown...**)
6. The potter was tired from hard work. The potter fell asleep in the sofa. (Begin: **Tired...**)
7. Many people are moving from the village. They are attracted by the excitement of town life. (Begin: **Attracted...**)
8. It was spoken in whispers. It could not be heard. (Begin: **Spoken...**)
9. The girl was tricked by her mother. The girl got into trouble. (Begin: **Tricked...**)
10. The aeroplane is helped by a heavy engine. The aeroplane can fly high in the sky. (Begin: **Helped...**)

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

These are sentences that expect a certain condition to be fulfilled. They are associated with if clauses and unless.

If 1 sentences	If 2 sentences	If 3 sentences
These	These	Thes

IF 1 SENTENCES

If 1 sentences talk about possible conditions and their possible results, e.g.

- (a) If I get money, I will go to Mbarara.
- (b) I will go to Mbarara if I get money.
- (c) If I am a monkey, I will climb trees.
- (d) I will climb trees if I am a monkey.
- (e) If he doesn't put on the headlights at night, he won't see where he is going.

NB:

If + present simple + will

IF 2 SENTENCES

If 2 sentences talk about unlikely conditions and their unlikely results, e.g.

- (a) If I got money, I would go to Mbarara.
- (b) I would go to Mbarara if I got money.
- (c) If I were a monkey, I would climb trees.
- (d) I would climb trees if I were a monkey.
- (e) I do not study in Kenya. I cannot learn Kiswahili.

If I studied in Kenya, I would learn Kiswahili.

If + past simple + would + infinitive

IF 3 SENTENCES

If 2 sentences talk about unfilled conditions and their unfulfilled results, e.g.

- (a) If I had got money, I would have gone to Mbarara.
- (b) I would have gone to Mbarara if I had got money.
- (c) If I had been a monkey, I would have climbed trees.
- (d) I would have climbed trees if I had been a monkey.

If + had + passive verb + would have + passive verbNB: If three sentences are mostly associated with the past simple tense. It can also use: Had, e.g.

- (a) Had I got money, I would have gone to Mbarara.
- (b) I would have gone to Mbarara had I got money.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. Lydia wasn't courageous. She did not flee the accident scene. (Use ... would have ...)
2. Mary will post her letter if she gets a stamp. (Use ... would ...)
3. If Emily read the instructions, she would not fail the examinations. (Begin: Had ...)
4. I am not a hen. I won't eat those insects. (Begin: If I were ...)
5. They did not go to the party. They did not see the bride. (Begin: If they had ...)
6. If Faridah reads a lot of storybooks, she will acquire many new ideas. (Use ... would...)
7. If my boss reaches the bank in time, he will withdraw the money. (Use ... withdrawn ...)
8. I am not a car. You cannot drive me. (Use ...were ...)
9. We shall win if we are prepared. (Use ...were ...)
10. I am not a cat. I will not hunt for rats. (Begin: If I were .. .)
11. Henry is not a monkey. He will not climb trees. (Use ... would ...)
12. The old man did not buy palm leaves. He did not make mats. (Begin: Had ...)
13. I am not my father. I can't marry many wives. (Usewere)
14. The lady will withdraw the money if she goes to the bank. (Use ...went ...)
15. Aida did not sweep the room. She did not have a broom. (Begin: Had ...)
16. We missed the flight because we arrived at the airport late. (Use ... would have ...)
17. The students would learn a lot if they went on an educational tour. (Use will)
18. The seamstress did not have a thimble. A needle pricked her. (Begin: Had)
19. If we get our reports in the evening, we shall leave very early in the morning. (Begin: Had ...)
20. Stephen did not visit her aunt. He did not listen to folktales. (Begin: If ...)
21. If I saw her, I would tell her the story. (Use ... had seen ...)

2. She will sharpen his tools. She will get a file.

She will sharpen his tools if she gets a file.

3. You will not pay for the service. The mechanic will not give you back your motorcycle.

The mechanic will not give you back your motorcycle if you do not pay for the service.

Activity 1.20

Rewrite the sentences below as instructed in the brackets.

1. If you drive fast, you will cause an accident. (Begin: You will ...)

2. Jovanisi will attend the burial. She will see the deceased. (Use: ... if ...)

3. Ntambi will get a hammer. He will hit the nails. (Begin: Ntambi will hit ...)

4. I will wait. My car may be repaired. (End: ... I wait.)

5. If I don't go to the garage, the mechanic will not work on my car's broken wheel. (Begin: The mechanic ...)

6. When I read hard, I will pass the engineering course. (Use: ... if ...)

7. You should come early and see the rallies. (Begin: You will ...)

8. Make an appointment and meet the mechanic. (Rewrite and end: ...appointment.)

9. Mukisa will get a tester and test for the presence of current

in the battery. (Use ... if ...)

10. If I get money, I will repair my car. (Use... if ...)

1. Martin will get a pair of pliers. He will cut the wires.

If Martin gets a pair of pliers, he will cut the wires.

2. Solomon will see the toolbox. He will remove the screwdriver.

If Solomon sees the toolbox, he will remove the screwdriver.

3. My car will break down. I will take it to the garage.

If my car breaks down, I will take it to the garage.

4. I will grease the chain of my bicycle when I get grease.

If I get grease, I will grease the chain of my bicycle.

Activity 1.19

Rewrite the following sentences as one beginning with If

1. The mechanic will repair the bicycle. Father will take the bicycle to the garage.

2. You will buy a carjack. You will go to town.

3. When I get money, I will buy a new tester.

4. The boy will bring the toolbox and the mechanic will pick a saw.

5. Get the spanner and loosen the wheel nuts.

6. Patricia will use a sandpaper and make the metal smooth.

7. I will not turn on the headlamps and I will not see at night.

8. Allan will not fasten the seat belt. He will get serious injuries in case of any accident.

9. Bonny will go to the city. He will buy spare parts for the

vehicles.

1. If Byenkya drives carefully, he will reach home safely.
2. I want to travel to the park. I want to first get money.

RELATIVE CLAUSES

These use relative pronouns like who, whom, whose, which, where, that, and so on. Who is only associated with people. Whose is used with possessive pronouns, such as, her, his, their, etc.

NB: You will most probably use a relative pronoun after the subject.

Consider:

- (a) What is the girl doing? Her brother passed exams.
- (b) That is the cat. It drank the baby's milk.
That is the cat which drank the baby's milk.
That is the cat that drank the baby's milk.
- (c) This is the hospital. My father was born in this hospital.
This is the hospital where my father was born.
This is the hospital in which my father was born.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. You were looking for your Nokia phone. It is right here. (Use ... which ...)
2. The table has been broken by Wasswa. We always sit at it and have dinner. (Use ... which ...)
3. Here comes the mechanic. His garage was burnt down. (Use ... whose ...)
4. The waitress was smartly dressed. We were served by her yesterday. (Use ... whom ...)
5. That is the train. The thieves were hiding inside it. (Use ...in which...)
6. Apio enjoys reading newspapers. She is my elder sister. (Use ... who ...)
7. That is the bag. I put my jewelry in that bag. (Use ...which...)

There are two kinds of relative clauses i.e. *defining* and *non-defining* clauses. Relative clauses use relative pronouns such as *who*, *which*, *whom*, *whose*, *that*, *where*, etc.

NB: These pronouns must come close to the subject.

DEFINING CLAUSES

These do not use any commas. Be careful with object pronouns such as *it, her, him, them*, etc.

Consider:

- (a) The boy fell off the bicycle. He is now in hospital.
The boy who fell off the bicycle is now in hospital.
- (b) The girl is fat. She stole my towel.
The girl who stole my towel is fat.
- (c) Show me the book. You have read it.
Show me the book which you have read.
- (d) Is this the soup? Did you make it?
Is this the soup which you made?
- (e) The book is called "Oliver Twist". I have read it.
The book which I have read is called "Oliver Twist".
- (f) A certain woman gave me the money. She was about forty.
The woman who gave me the money was about forty.
- (g) Water contains salt. It is unsuitable for drinking.
Water which contains salt is unsuitable for drinking.
- (h) A book does not teach you anything. It is not necessarily useless.
A book which does not teach you anything is not necessarily useless.

Activity I

Join each of the following pairs of items into one sentence using a suitable relative pronoun.

1. I could hear the words of the song. They were singing it.
2. He can do sums. Even the teacher finds them difficult.
3. The songs help them to work harder. The labourers sing them as they cut the grass.
4. The statement was a lie. She made it yesterday.
5. The stranger was a police officer. They accused him of theft.
6. One thing is how the child managed to climb the tree. I cannot understand it.
7. A certain boxer fell out of the ring. He finally won the fight.
8. The bomb exploded in Kampala in 2010. It claimed over a hundred lives.
9. The man explained the new strategy for fighting poverty out of Uganda. He will visit this village next month.
10. The mountain was worshipped as a god. It towered over the village.

Activity II

(Preposition + relative pronoun)

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

Consider:

- (a) The woman I am staying with is very kind to people. (Begin: The woman with ...)
The woman with whom I am staying is very kind to people.
- (b) The man you told me about has come to see you. (Begin: The man about ...)
The man about whom you told me has come to see you.
1. The room she sleeps in smells of perfume. (Use **...in which...**)
 2. The material it is made of is very expensive. (**The material of ...**)
 3. The town I come from is in the north. (Begin: **The town from ...**)
 4. The school we go to has very good teachers. (Begin: **The school to ...**)
 5. The car that the president arrived in is parked outside. (Begin: **The car in ...**)
 6. The question that the teacher was dealing with was hard to follow. (Use **...with which...**)
 7. A man that everybody can rely on is very hard to find. (Begin: **The man on ...**)
 8. The money that the brothers were arguing about belongs to their father. (Begin: **The money about ...**)
 9. The plans that the government objects to will never succeed. (Begin: **The plans to ...**)
 10. The people that Susan works for I don't like. (Begin: **The people for ...**)

Activity III

Join each of the following pairs of items into one sentence as instructed in the brackets.

Consider:

- (a) This is the woman. I am staying with her. (End **...with**)
This is the woman I am staying with.
- (b) This is the man. I am staying with him. (Use **...with whom...**)
This is the man with whom I am staying.
1. I could not see the person. Amina was talking to him. (End **...talking.**)
 2. This is the weapon. He fought with it. (Use **...with which...**)
 3. The man was talking about politics. The crowd were listening to him. (Use **...to whom...**)
 4. The examination takes place next week. This class is preparing for it. (Use **...for which...**)
 5. The pot suddenly broke. The soup was boiling in it. (End **...broke.**)
 6. Luckily the ground was soft. The baby fell on it. (Use **...on which...**)
 7. The person was Felix Kaweesi. We all felt sorry for him. (Begin: **The person for ...**)
 8. The disease has defeated all the doctors. The people are suffering from it. (Use **...from which...**)
 9. We went to the place. Our teacher had told us about it. (Use **...about which...**)
 10. The only thing is $2+2=4$. We are sure of it. (Begin: **The only thing of ...**)

Activity IV

(whose)

Whose is a possessive relative pronoun. It is used in the place of pronouns such as *his, her, their, its*, etc.

Consider:

- (a) This is the man. His wife won the beauty contest.
This is the man whose wife won the beauty contest.
- (b) These are the cows. Their owners let them roam about.
These are the cows whose owners let them roam about.
- (c) This is the woman. You met her husband yesterday.
This is the woman whose husband you met yesterday.
- (d) He was a man. His only advantage in life was his unusual strength.
He was a man whose only advantage in life was his unusual strength.
- (e) In the town is a monument to those. They died for their country.
In the town is a monument to those for whose country they died.
 - 1. The farmer has gone to the police. His goat ran away.
 - 2. Mothers can get free treatment. Their babies are sick.
 - 3. The boys will get their books later. Their essays have not been marked.
 - 4. The teacher is very angry. We missed his lesson.
 - 5. Where is the boy? His story won the first prize.
 - 6. The girl is very proud. Her father was crowned king.
 - 7. The soldier was severely punished. His gun was found with the thieves.
 - 8. The driver was drunk. His vehicle caused the accident.
 - 9. The man can marry somebody else. His wife is dead.
 - 10. The lady said it was our fault. Her dog bit us.

Activity V

- 1. The girl has written you a letter. You liked her character.
- 2. All the folks were called to the police station. Their property had been stolen.
- 3. The person has the same name as you. You opened his envelope.
- 4. I went to help a man. His bicycle chain had broken.
- 5. The woman was very grateful. You carried her bag.
- 6. The woman is your mother-in-law. You married to her daughter.
- 7. She is getting married to the man. She saved his life.
- 8. The child is now grown up. They took her photograph.
- 9. The boy will never pass examinations. His only interest is in dating girls.
- 10. Where is the man? His car went into the ditch.

Activity VI

(whose + preposition)

Consider:

This is the woman. I am living in her house.

This is the woman whose house I am living in.

This is the woman in whose house I am living.

1. The girl was wearing a mask. You laughed at her face. (Join using ...**at whose**...)
2. How old was the chief? We went to his funeral. (End ...**to**?)
3. The king is coming to see me. I belong to his family. (End ...**me**.)
4. The woman is extremely worried. They are looking for her son. (Begin: **The woman whose ...**)
5. The boy has won a scholarship. They are talking about his work. (End ...**scholarship**.)
6. Have you apologised to the stranger? You trod on his foot. (Use ...**on whose**...)
7. The hero is now dead. You are looking at his portrait. (Begin: **The hero at ...**)
8. She was sitting next to the boy. She borrowed his pen. (Begin: **The boy whose ...**)
9. The girl is leaving. You are so fond of her face. (Begin: **The girl whose ...**)
10. The pupils must hurry up. I am waiting for their books. (Use..**whose**...)

NON - DEFINING CLAUSES

These are usually separated from the rest of the sentence by commas, e.g.

- (a) The girls who came in late had to remain standing. (Defining)
The girls, who came in late, had to remain standing. (Non-defining)

NB: In the defining clause, we are talking about certain girls iethose who came late, not those who came early. In the non-defining clause, you are actually talking about all the girls. It means that all the girls were late.

Non-defining unlike defining clauses do not define their nouns or pronoun.

- (b) Long-horn cattle come from Ankore. They look beautiful.
Long-horn cattle, which come from Ankore, look beautiful.
- (c) The steam engine owed more to engineers than to scientists. Many different people helped to invent and improve it.
The steam engine, which many different people helped to invent and improve, owed more to engineers than to scientists.
- (d) Nince Henry is one of the most successful songwriters of modern Uganda. I have a great admiration for Nince Henry.
Nince Henry, for whom I have a great admiration, is one of the most successful songwriters of modern Uganda.

- (e) Water, without which life is impossible, is almost non-existent in certain areas.
- (f) Kings, in whose reigns great events take place, are not thereby great in themselves.
- (g) The cave, in which prophet Muhammad received his first prophetic inspiration, was at the Arabian town of Mecca.
- (h) The newspapers, which were all strictly controlled, did not publish the full story.

Activity I

Join each of the following pairs of items into one non-defining clause.

1. The king of the Baganda is called Kabaka. He has always been an important figure in Ugandan history.
2. The Arabs speak one of the world's principal languages. They have been the leading race for hundreds of years in Asia.
3. An old man in an azure sweater suddenly stood up in the middle of the crowd. Nobody had noticed him.
4. Abraham Lincoln was murdered just before the end of the war. Everybody reveres him for getting rid of slavery in America.
5. The coffee industry is now very important. African farmers started to develop it in the colonial days.
6. The carburettor measures out the petrol and mixes it with air. It is usually fixed high up on one side of the engine.
7. William Shakespeare wrote over thirty plays. Many people regard him as the greatest English author of all times.
8. Every car is supplied with a tool called a jack. By means of the jack, the vehicle can be raised from the ground to allow a wheel to be changed.
9. Queen Elizabeth died in 1901. The famous grab for Africa took place in her reign.
10. A famous African teacher told us that the black and white races should work together like the black and white keys of the piano. We respect the opinions of this teacher.

Activity II

1. These African universities are increasing our knowledge of our own culture. One of them has just celebrated its tenth anniversary.
2. London is the capital of Great Britain. London has a population of eight millions.
3. He noticed a stranger wearing a big straw hat. The stranger was talking to his father.
4. Roofing sheets are now manufactured at home. Uganda used to import roofing sheets from abroad.
5. In the 1950s and 1960s many African countries gained their independence from the colonial rule. One of these countries was the Gold Coast.
6. The first leader of the independent Congo was cruelly murdered. His name was Patrice Lumumba.
7. The Nile is of particular help to the people of Egypt. The people of Egypt use its water to irrigate their farms.

8. Amos Tutuola is a Nigerian. His books are well known in Europe.
9. Millions of slaves were taken away from their homeland. Many of the slaves came from West Africa.
10. Most of Tanzania was once under the Germans. The British fought against the Germans in the wars of 1914 and 1939.

ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

Abbreviations are at times called contractions or short forms.

Consider:

Short form	Full form
abbr.	abbreviation
ABS	Animal Behaviour Society
A/c	Account
AD	In the year of the lord
Ag.	Acting
AH	Anno Hegira
a.m.	before noon
approx.	approximately
ASAP	As soon as possible

Ave.	Avenue
aka	also known as
AOB	Any other business
Asst.	Assistant
ATM	automated teller machine
Attn	Attention
AVAR	Animal Veterinarians for Animal Rights
UWA	Uganda Wildlife Authority
AWOL	Absent without leave
Bro	Brother
can't	cannot
Capt.	Captain
CAPS	Captive Animals Protection Society
cc	carbon copy
Cf.	Compare
CD	Compact disc
Co.	Company
C/o	Care of
COD	cash on delivery
Col.	Colonel
couldn't	could not
CV	Curriculum vitae
Dec.	December
Dept.	Department
didn't	did not

DIY	Do it yourself
DMC	Dangerous mechanical condition
do	did not
don't	the same
doesn't	does not
doz.	dozen
Dr	Doctor
DV	The same
DVD	Digital video machine
e.g.	For example
email	Electronic mail
esp.	especially
EMS	express mail service
et all	and others
etc.	and so on
FAQ	Frequently asked questions
Fig.	Figure
Ft.	foot/ feet
FYI	For your information
GMT	Greenwich Mean Time
GPO	General Post Office
GPS	Global positioning system
H.E.	His Excellence
He'd	He had/ He would
He's	He is/ He has

hols	holidays
Hon.	Honourable
HP	Horse power
HQ	Headquarters
I'd	I had/ I would
i.e.	That is to say
I'll	I will/ I shall
I'm	I am
It's	It is/ It has
I've	I have
IOU	I owe you
Is.	Island/Isle
Jan.	January
Jr	Junior
Kg	Kilogramme
Km	Kilometre
Let's	Let us
Lt.	Lieutenant
Ltd	Limited
Maths	Mathematics
MC	Master of ceremonies
MIA	Missing in Action
Min.	Minute
Miss	Misses
mm	Millimetre

Mon	Monday
MP	Member of Parliament
Mph	Metres per hour
Mr.	Mister
Mrs.	Mistress
mustn't	must not
Mt.	Mountain
N/ No.	Number
NB	Note carefully
Needn't	Need not
Ne'ever	Never
OC	Officer in charge
O'clock	Of the clock
OMG	Oh my God
Oughtn't	ought not
P.E.	Physical Education
PH.D	Doctor of Philosophy
PIN	Personal Identification Number
PO Box	Post Office Box
POS	Point of sale
POW	Prisoner of war
pp	On behalf of/ pages
Prof.	Professor
P.S.	Post script
P'se	Please

PSV	Public service vehicle
PTO	Please turn over
PWDs	People with disabilities
RAM	Random access memory
Ref	Referee
Reference	Reference
Rev.	Reverend
ROM	Read only memory
R.S.V.P.	Please reply
Rtd	Retired
Sec	Secretary
Sec.	Second
Sgt.	Sergeant
shan't	shall not
Shouldn't	should not
Shs	Shillings
SMS	short message service
SOPs	Standard operating procedures
Sr	Senior/ Sister
St.	Street/ Saint
Sq.	Square
Tel.	Telephone number
Temp.	Temperature
There's	There is/ There has
Tr	Teacher

TV	television
UJCC	Uganda Joint Christian Council
UMSC	Uganda Muslim Supreme Council
UPE	Universal Primary Education
USB	universal serial port
USPA	Uganda Society for Protection of Animals
UWA	Uganda Wildlife Authority
UWEC	Uganda Wildlife Education Centre
Vet.	Veterinary surgeon/ Veterinarian
via	By way of
VIP	Very Important Person
Viz	Namely
Vol.	Volume
Vs	Versus
wasn't	was not
we're	we are
WCU	Wildlife Clubs of Uganda
wef	With effect from
WiFi	Wireless Fidelity
won't	will not
WSPA	World Society for Protection of Animals
www	worldwide web/ The web
4th	fourth
9th	ninth
12th	twelfth

@	at
©	Copyright
're	are
's	is/ has

Activity I

Activity II

<p><i>Write each of the following items in full.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. O'clock 2. Ag. 3. DV 4. cf. 5. 9th 6. Tel. 7. shs. 8. TIN 9. doz. 10. viz 11. via 12. pp 13. abbr. 14. prof. 15. Brig. 16. attn 	<p><i>Write each of the following words in short.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. European Union 2. Any other business 3. Twelfth 4. Account 5. Reverend 6. Care of 7. Mountain 8. Wednesday 9. Spelling 10. and so on 11. For instance 12. I have 13. Department 14. that is 15. Company
--	--

PROVERBS

These are also known as sayings.

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. actions speak louder than words 2. the apple never falls far from the tree 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 72. love is blind 73. every man for himself
--	--

3. if you can't beat them, join them	74. one man's meat is another man's poison
4. beauty is in the eye of the beholder	75. you can't keep a good man down
5. beauty is only skin-deep	76. marry in haste, repent at leisure
6. you've made your bed and you must lie in/on it	77. the more the merrier
7. beggars can't be choosers	78. a miss is as good as a mile
8. seeing is believing	79. money talks
9. a bird in the hand is worth two in the bush	80. mud sticks
10. birds of a feather flock together	81. necessity is the mother of invention
11. blood is thicker than water	83. great oaks from little acorns grow
12. born with a silver spoon in your mouth	84. you can't make an omelette without breaking eggs
13. there is one born every minute	85. once bitten, twice shy
14. boys will be boys	86. you are only young once
15. when the cat is away the mice will play	87. no pain, no gain
16. charity begins at home	88. he who pays the piper calls the tune
17. every cloud has a silver lining	89. the pen is mightier than the sword
18. cut your coat according to your cloth	90. people who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones
19. two is company, three is a crowd	91. any port in a storm
	92. possession is nine tenths of the law

20. too many cooks spoil the broth	93. the pot calling the kettle black
21. don't count your chickens before they are hatched	94. practice makes perfect
22. curiosity killed the cat	95. prevention is better than cure
23. better the devil you know than the devil you don't	96. pride comes/goes before a fall
24. the devil makes work for idle works	97. it never rains but it pours
25. discretion is the better part of valour	98. you reap what you sow
26. why keep a dog and bark yourself?	99. the road to hell is paved with good intentions
28. be easier said than done	100. rob Peter to pay Paul
30. the end justifies the means	101. a rolling stone gathers no moss
31. a man's home is his castle	102. Rome wasn't built in a day
32. an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth	103. when in Rome do as the Romans do
33. what the eye doesn't see the heart doesn't grieve for	104. a rose by any other name would smell as sweet
34. all is fair in love and war	105. better safe than sorry
35. familiarity breeds contempt	106. there is safety in numbers
36. so far, so good	107. least said soonest mended
37. it's not over until the fat lady sings	108. never say die
	109. you scratch my back and I'll scratch yours
	110. silence is golden

38. like father, like son	111. let sleeping dogs lie
39. first come, first served	
40. if you've got it, flaunt it	112. there's many a slip betwixt cup and lip
41. a fool and his money are soon parted	113. it's a small world
42. fools rush in where angels fear to tread	114. where there's smoke, there's fire
43. there is no fool like an old fool	115. the spirit is willing but the flesh is weak
44. forewarned is forearmed	116. still waters run deep
45. a friend in need is a friend indeed	117. a stitch in time saves nine
46. out of the frying pan into the fire	118. strike while the iron is hot
47. what goes around comes around	119. one good turn deserves another
48. when the going gets tough the tough get going	120. one swallow doesn't make a summer
49. all that glitters/glistens is not gold	121. you can't teach an old dog new tricks
50. the grass is always greener on the other side of the fence	122. you can never tell/ you never can tell
51. Half a loaf is better than no bread	123. these things are sent to try us
52. many hands make light work	124. there is no time like the present
53. more haste, less speed	125. time is money
	126. time will tell
	127. a trouble shared is a trouble halved

54. make hay while the sun shines	128. truth is stranger than fiction
55. two heads are better than one	129. variety is the spice of life
56. he who hesitates is lost	130. nothing ventured, nothing gained
57. home is where the heart is	131. virtue is its own reward
58. hope springs eternal	132. walls have ears
59. you can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it drink	133. waste not, want not
60. ignorance is bliss	134. a watched pot never boils
61. give sb an inch and they will take a mile	135. there's more than one way to skin a cat
62. don't judge a book by its cover	136. Where there's a will, there's a way
63. kill the goose that lays the golden egg	137. All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy
64. better late than never	138. Two wrongs don't make a right
65. he who laughs last laughs longest	139. A good name is better than riches.
66. look before you leap	140. Don't bite the hand that feeds you.
67. a leopard cannot change its spots	
69. lightning never strikes in the same place twice	
70. live and let live	
71. live to fight another day	

Activity

Complete each of the following items with a suitable word

1. One by one _____ a bundle.
2. A _____ cannot change its spots.
3. One good turn _____ another.
4. Faint heart _____ won fair lady.
5. Look before you _____.
6. Don't bite the hand _____.
- 7.

Rearrange each item to make a correct sentence.

1. stitch nine A in saves time.
2. shy bitten twice Once.
3. better cure Prevention than is.
4. reward its is own Virtue.
5. home his man's castle A is.

Rewrite each item and complete the proverb.

1. One man's meat is _____.
2. Birds of a _____
3. Charity _____.
4. Waste not, _____.
5. A friend in need _____.

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION

Consider:

- (a) The candidates intend to perform well this year. (Use ...**intention**...)
- (b) I aim at joining secondary school next year. (Begin: **My**...)
- (c) She needs to be attentive in class. (Use...**attention**...)
- (d) Bad people use language to abuse. (Use ...**abusive**...)
- (e) We enjoyed our trip to Kidepo. (End...**enjoyable**.)

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Emmanuel intends to travel to the village next week. (Use...**intention**...)
2. She always dances wonderfully. (Use ...**wonderful**...)
3. The people were happy after the guest had spoken. (End...**speech**.)
4. Bruce Lee comes from China. (End ...**Chinese**.)
5. Peter's date of birth is 23rd March 2000. (Begin: **Peter was**...)
6. Bob intends to join a technical school after P.7. (Begin: **Bob's**...)
7. Everyone in the room was silent. (Begin: **There was total**...)
8. There are many women of beauty in Rwanda. (Begin: **Rwanda**...)
9. You should take care whenever you are crossing a busy road. (Begin: **Be careful**...)
10. He is a man of wealth. (End...**man**.)
11. Kazinga is not as bushy as Nyakitara. (Begin: **Nyakitara**....)
12. I am different from my friend. (End..... different.)
13. What is the cost of a new pair of scissors? (Begin: **How much**...)
14. Yamato comes from Poland. He doesn't come from Japan. (Use.....**not**... **Japanese**.)
15. Kanuti always tells his children not to tell lies. (Use...**to be**...)
16. Due to lack of funds, some of the school projects will not be completed this year. (Use ... because of ...)
17. Take care when using that sharp knife. (Begin: Be ...)

Activity II

1. She was demoted for being disloyal to her boss. (Use....**got a**...)
2. The girls are using straws to weave mats. (Use....**weaving**...)
3. It is likely to rain cats and dogs today. (possibility)
4. It is impossible for the builders to avoid breaking the bricks. (can't help)
5. Her bag has been stolen. (Begin: She...)
6. We should always cross busy roads carefully. (Use...**with**....)
7. Daniel has been elected as the head boy because he is smart. (End:**smartness**.)
8. Is our teacher related to you? (End ... **relative**?)
9. I was not attentive in class. (...**did not pay** ...)
10. Does your brother drive carefully? (Begin: **Is** ...?)
11. We walked to the museum gently. (End ... **way**.)
12. Patrick forgot to punctuate his answers. (Use ... **remember** ...)
13. When James failed to pass the examinations, everyone was surprised. (Begin: **James'** ...)
14. What is the width of your building? (Begin: **How** ...)
15. I did not intend to hurt you. (Begin: **It wasn't** ...)
16. She is happy with her husband. (Use ... **proud** ...)
17. What is she wearing? (Begin: **How** ...)
18. People in England speak English. (Begin: **English** ..)
19. Of the two games, which one did you choose? (End ... **choice**?)
20. How high is Mount Rwenzori? (Begin: What ...?)

ING WORDS AS SUBJECTS

Consider:

- (a) It is very difficult to calm down angry voters.
Calming down angry voters is very difficult.
- (b) Dodging lessons is very bad.
It is very bad to dodge lessons.
- (c) It is hard to stay with stubborn children.
Staying with stubborn children is hard.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

- 1. Judging a book by its cover is wrong. (Begin: **It is...**)
- 2. It is difficult to live with relatives who want to eat meat only. (Begin: **Living...**)
- 3. It is not good to misuse school property. (End...**not good.**)
- 4. Watching comedians amuses a lot. (Begin: **It is...**)
- 5. To study in a good school is very interesting. (Begin: **Studying...**)
- 6. Telling lies is not good. (Begin: **It is**)
- 7. It is fascinating to watch football on a big screen. (Begin: **Watching...**)
- 8. Threading a needle is not easy. (Begin: It is....)
- 9. It is not right to fight your classmates. (Begin: **Fighting...**)
- 10. Walking alone at night is risky. (Begin: It is....)
- 11. It is very dangerous to swim in a deep pool. (Begin: Swimming)
- 12.

CONSIST/COMPRISE/COMPOSED/MADE UP

Consist, composed and made up are followed by of while comprise goes without of.

Consider:

- (a) The English paper is made up of two sections.
The English paper consists of two sections.
The English paper is composed of two sections.
The English paper comprises two sections.
- (b) The new hotel comprises fifty-five bedrooms.
The new hotel consists of fifty-five bedrooms.
The new hotel is made up of fifty-five bedrooms.
The new hotel is composed of fifty-five bedrooms.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. The new resort consists of two swimming pools. (Use...**comprise**...)
2. A football team comprises eleven players. (Use...**made up**....)
3. There are many political parties in Uganda. (Use...**consist**...)
4. The Bible is made of two testaments. (Use....**comprise**...)
5. Primary Seven is made up of eighty-seven pupils. (Use...
Comprise.....)
6. The envelope contains letters from my distant friends. (consist)
7. The science examination has got two sections. (Use **comprised**....)
8. A fortnight consists of fourteen days. (Use ...)
9. The team consists of young boys and girls. (Use**comprise**)
10. The keyboard comprises black and white keys. (Use**composed of** ...)

NOUN + POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

Consider:

- (a) Our friend has just tested positive to Covid-19.
A friend of ours has just tested positive to Covid-19.
- (b) My sister has left for Paris.
A sister of mine has left for Paris.
- (c) A brother of mine studies at MUBS.
My brother studies at MUBS.
- (d) A girl friend of Peter's works as a receptionist at Rural Solace Restaurant.
Peter's girl friend works as a receptionist at Rural Solace Restaurant.
- (e) Her father's boss is a kind person.
A boss of her father is a kind person.
A boss of her father's is a kind person.

NB: It is possible to use two different patterns while talking about family relationships as seen in example (e) above.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Our uncle is going to wed this week. (Begin: **An uncle** ...)
2. Rodgers is my good friend. (Use...**friend of**...)
3. My cousin apologized to the teacher. (Begin: **A cousin**...)
4. My friend can knead the dough very well. (Begin: **A friend**...)
5. My aunt sells television sets in Kireka. (Begin: **An aunt** ...)
6. Their great uncle is going to be the master of ceremonies. (Begin: **A great**)

7. My daughter who lives in Lira will visit me next year. (Begin: **A daughter...**)
8. Sonia's neighbour is a teacher at Kings Junior School. (Begin: A ... of ...)
9. One of your comrades is a motivational speaker. (
10. A close friend of my sister's visited us last week. (Begin: My ...)
11. Barbara's niece has sent her an email. (Begin: A niece of)
12. I am Anne's sister. (Begin: Anne ...)
- 13.

NO SOONER ...THAN

Consider:

- (a) We opened the door. Our class teacher entered.
No sooner had we opened the door than our class teacher entered.
No sooner did we open the door than our class teacher entered.
We had no sooner opened the door than our class teacher entered.
- (b) David took his car to the garage. The mechanic repaired it immediately.
No sooner had David taken his car to the garage than the mechanic repaired it.
No sooner did David take his car to the garage than the mechanic repaired it.
David had no sooner taken his car to the garage than the mechanic repaired it.
- (c) The moment the mourners saw the hearse, they began weeping.
No sooner had the mourners seen the hearse than they began weeping.
No sooner did the mourners see the hearse than they began weeping.

NB: Sooner is a comparative just like bigger, smarter, and that is why it is followed by than.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. She travelled upcountry immediately she got her maternity leave. (Begin: She had no sooner)
2. As soon as Amooti appeared on stage, everybody clapped him. (Begin: No sooner had)
3. He started bleeding as soon as he fell down. (Begin: No sooner)
4. Barely had she entered the room when she heard the gunshot. (Begin: No sooner did ...)
5. The moment it started raining, farmers sowed their seeds. (Useno sooner)

6. Immediately the striker scored the winning goal, the spectators were aflame with happiness.
(Begin: The striker had no sooner)
7. The lion saw the antelope. The lion sprang and caught it. (Begin: No sooner)
8. As soon as the sun set, the whole village was shrouded in darkness. (Useno sooner)
9. Immediately the teller received the cheque, he signed it. (Begin: No sooner ...)
10. The thief had no sooner broken into bank safe than the police arrived. (Begin: No sooner ...)
11. The candidates went on a tour immediately they finished their P.L.E. examinations. (Begin: No sooner did ...)

HARDLY/BARELY/SCARCELY/RARELY WHEN

Consider:

- (a) Doris went to the bathroom as soon as she reached home.
Scarcely had Doris reached home when she went to the bathroom.
Doris had scarcely reached home when she went to the bathroom.
- (b) The moment we arrived at the station, the bus left.
Hardly had we arrived at the station when the bus left.
We had hardly arrived at the station when the bus left.
- (c) The sun set on the distant horizon. Darkness set in.
Barely had the sun set on the distant horizon when darkness set in.
The sun had barely set on the distant horizon when darkness set in.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. As soon as our class teacher entered the room, we all kept quiet. (Begin: Barely ...)
2. Immediately I saw a ghost, I froze. (Use ... barely ...)
3. I dozed off soon after entering my bedroom. (Begin: Scarcely ...)
4. As soon as she got a first grade, her father bought her an elegant dress. (Begin: She had barely)
5. Mama withdrew the money from her account soon after entering the bank hall. (Begin: Rarely ...)
6. No sooner did I see the thieves than I alerted the police. (Begin: I had barely)
7. The moment she finished the first drink, she ordered for two more. (Begin: Hardly)
8. Hardly had he finished school when he married the girl of his dreams. (Begin: He had hardly ...)
9. We entered the house. It started raining. (Begin: Scarcely ...)
10. The siblings started fighting over their father's land immediately after his death. (Begin: Barely ...)

ALTHOUGH /THOUGH/EVEN THOUGH/MUCH AS/WHEREAS

These are used to express a contrast just like but. It is not correct to use but after these conjunctions.

Consider:

- 26. Game meat is tasty but many people don't like it.
- 27. Osbert is shy. He was voted the chairperson at the meeting.
- 28. Despite his wisdom, many people don't respect him.
- 29. I travelled alone at night. It was very dark.
- 30. Many people don't like Nyanzi much as he is generous.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

- 1. The rapist bribed the police. He was found guilty. (Begin: **Much as...**)
- 2. Some candidates were reminded to read the instructions. They forgot to do it. (Begin: **Even though...**)
- 3. Many of them were religious. The old beliefs were still very much alive. (Begin: **Although...**)
- 4. She had all the qualifications but she did not get the job. (Begin: **Though...**)
- 5. In spite of Paul's laziness, he writes neat work. (Use...**although...**)
- 6. Corruption happens in many different forms. Many of us believe that it is only bribery that shows corruption. (Use...**much as...**)
- 7. They were sad. They gave an amazing speech. (Use...**even though...**)
- 8. Poisonous snakes are very dangerous. They hardly attack people unless they are trodden on. (Use...**although...**)
- 9. It was raining. The children kept on playing outside. (Begin: **Although...**)
- 10. Karen was sick. She walked to school. (Begin: **Much as...**)
- 11. The lion was injured. It was not given any medication. (Begin: **Even though...**)
- 12. The girl made loud alarms. Nobody came to her rescue. (Begin: **Whereas...**)
- 13. He is a soldier. He has never done any fighting. (Use...**although...**)
- 14. Bogere studied carpentry. Bogere wanted to study building. (Begin: **Although...**)
- 15. Cinderella wanted very much to go to the dance, but her sisters told her to stay at home. (Begin: **Much as...**)
- 16. Lions are fierce animals. Hyenas fear them. (Usewhereas)
- 17. Whereas a timekeeper manages time, a secretary records points during a debate. (Begin: **Much as**)
- 18. Although she wasn't well, she taught us. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
- 19.

IT'S HIGH TIME

This is

Consider:

You should speak politely.

This structure is usually followed by a past form though its meaning may not necessarily be past.

Consider:

- (a) *It's high time I went to bed.*
- (b) Let's write to our friends.
It's high time we wrote to our friends.
- (c) She had better wake up
It's high time she woke up.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items beginning: It's high time...

1. You
- 2.
- 3.
4. consult a doctor.
5. She should speak politely.
6. I ought to wake up.
7. We should take our books for marking.
8. Jane needs to respect her elder brother.
9. The candidates must read in time.
10. They should go back home.
11. Let's watch an interesting film.
12. The carpenter must smooth the that table.
13. The radio should broadcast the latest news.

AFTER AND BEFORE

Consider:

- (a) Y comes before Z.
Z comes after Y.
- (b) February comes after January.
January comes before February.
- (c) The clinic is before the supermarket.
The supermarket is after the clinic.
- (d) She helped her mother after doing homework.
She did homework before helping her mother.
After doing homework, she helped her mother.
- (e) We washed our hands before kneading the dough.
We kneaded the dough after washing our hands.

Activity I

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Musa finished revising his books. He went for a rest. (Begin: **After...**)
2. Twenty comes before twenty-one. (Use...**after...**)
3. They go to school after taking their breakfast. (Use...**before...**)
4. The candidates were briefed. They did their PLE examinations. (Use...**after...**)
5. Aamal had supper and then she went to bed. (Begin: **After...**)
6. Nambi wrote the reply after reading the letter. (Use...**before...**)
7. Lillian played netball at school before she went home. (Begin: **Lillian went....**)
8. When the bell rang, we had finished our work. (Use ...**after...**)
9. Rona ate her food. She washed the utensils. Use...**after...**)
10. Before mixing the ingredients, the baker measured them. (Use...**before...**)
11. We gave our answer sheets to the invigilator. He sealed them in an envelope. (Begin: **After...**)
12. She said a prayer before having a meal. (Use...**after...**)
13. After saying our night prayers, we went to bed. (Use...**before...**)
14. The big tree is after you have reached Mr. Musoke's home. (Begin: Mr. Musoke's home..)
15. The mechanic repaired my car. I paid him. (Begin: **After...**)

Activity II

1. Aminah swept the kitchen before setting the fire. (Use... after....)
2. The girls swept the office. The Headmistress then went home. (Begin: The Headmistress went ...)
3. After making a statement, the witness went away. Useafter...)
4. The moment the timekeeper rang the bell, the morning lessons began. (Use ... before)

5. By the time the police came, the robbers had left the bank. (Use ...after)
6. Having put up our school signpost, the headteacher addressed the pupils.
7. Samantha fell sick after eating poisoned food. (Use before)
8. They drank the water after boiling it. (Use ... before ...)
9. I put a stamp on the envelope. I inserted it in a mailbox. (Use ... after...)

BORROW AND LEND

Consider:

- (a) Jeremiah lent Robert five hundred shillings.
Robert borrowed five hundred shillings from Jeremiah.
- (b) My mother borrowed a bag from Mrs. Kibirige.
Mrs. Kibirige lent a bag to my mother.
- (c) I can't remember the person who lent me this money.
I can't remember the person from whom I borrowed this money.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Kizito lent me his bicycle this morning. (Use...**borrow**...)
2. Please, lend me your pen. (Begin: **May I**...)
3. Will Fred borrow a book from Fahad? (Uselend....)
4. I cannot tell the butcher from whom I bought the meat. (Uselend ...)
5. I would like to borrow a pencil from my cousin. (Uselend ...)
6. The tailor has lent these scissors to Namata. (Use ... borrow)
7. Audrey lent Milly five cups. (Useborrow...)
8. Lend me your pen. (Begin: May I?)
- 9.

ARRIVE AND REACH

Consider:

- (a) They reached the zoo late because the bus had broken down.
They arrived at the zoo late because the bus had broken down.
- (b) Peter arrived at the airport late.
Peter reached the airport late.
- (c) She reached the taxi park at 8:00am.
She arrived at the taxi park at 8:00am.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

10. We arrived at the hospital before midday. (Use...**reach**...)

11. Did you reach school on time? (Use...**arrive**...)

BELONG AND OWNER

Consider:

(a) That dress belongs to Linda.

Linda is the owner of that dress.

(b) This book belongs to me.

I am the owner of this book.

(c) The pen you have taken is Michael's.

The pen you have taken belongs to Michael.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. That phone belongs to Mr. Brown. (Use...**owner**...)

2. Who is the owner of this novel? (Begin: **To whom**...)

3. These are our books. (Use...**belong**...)

4. The trendy phone belongs to Mohsen. (Use...**owner**...)

5. Does this luggage belong to you? (Begin: **Is this**...)

6. Are you the owner of this book? (Begin: **Does**...)

7. The dictionary belongs to Tito. (Begin: **Tito is**...)

8. James owns the two taxis. (Use ...**belong**...)

9. The donkey belongs to the princess. (Use...**owner**...)

10. That house is Maryam's. (Use...**belong**...)

LONG AND FAR

Far is normally used in negative and interrogative sentences. *Long* is used in positive sentences.

Consider:

(a) Our garden is a long way from the restaurant.

Our garden is not far from the restaurant.

Is our garden far from the restaurant?

(b) It is six kilometres from Tonny's house to school.

It is a long way from Tonny's house to school.

It is not far from Tonny's house to school.

Is it far from Tonny's house to school?

- (c) It is not far from Kampala to Mpigi.

Is it far from Kampala to Mpigi?

It is a long way from Kampala to Mpigi.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. It is not far from here to the shop. (Use...**long**...)
2. It is a long way from the bursar's office to the canteen. (Use...**far**...)
3. Is it far from his home to the mosque? (Use...**long**...)
4. Driving from Arua to Gulu takes hours. (Begin: **It is a** ...)
5. The school is next to the petrol station. (Use.....**far** ...)
6. Is it far from Murema to Kabula? (Change the sentence to affirmative)
7. It is 5km from home to school. (Use**far**....)
8. The railway station is not far from Sudan. (Usea long way....)
9. It is not far from Masindi to Hoima, is it? (End, isn't it?)
10. Kansanga is a long way from Kibuli, isn't it? (End ..., is it?)
11. It is not far from here to the airport. (Begin: Is it ...?)

MUCH AND A LOT OF

Much is usually used in negative and interrogative sentences. It is used before uncountable nouns, e.g. much money, much time, much water, much oil, much food, etc.

A lot of is used in positive sentences. You may choose to use *a great deal of* or *lots of* instead of *a lot of*.

Notice the spelling of *a lot of* comprises three words. If you want to use much in a positive sentence, use such words as so, very, too, as., e.g. so much, very much.

Consider:

- (a) There is a lot of dust in this box.
There is so much dust in this box.
There isn't much dust in this box.
Is there much dust in this box?
- (b) There isn't much water in the tank.
There is a lot of water in the tank.
There is so much water in the tank.

Is there much water in the tank?

(c) My aunt has a lot of money on her bank account.

My aunt doesn't have much money on her bank account.

My aunt has so much money on her bank account.

Does my aunt have much money on her bank account?

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. We have had a lot of rain this season. (Begin: **We haven't had...**)
2. I haven't much work to do. (Use...**a lot...**)
3. We have a lot of space in our dormitory. (Use...**much...**)
4. The prisoners don't have much freedom. (Begin: **The prisoners have...**)
5. There isn't much water in the desert. (End...?)
6. How much time do you have? (Use...**a lot...**)
7. The doctor is paid a lot of money. (Begin: **The doctor isn't...**)
8. She doesn't know much about wrestling. (Use...**a lot...**)
9. There is a lot of English spoken in this school. (Begin: Begin: **There isn't...**)
10. The students in this class blow a lot of noise. (Use...**much...**)
11. There was not much work to do. (Use ... a lot ...)
12. I have a lot of money. She has a lot of money. (Use ...as much ...)
- 13.

BECAUSE AND SINCE

These are used to express a reason. They are normally used within the sentence, but at times come at the beginning.

Consider:

- (a) The boy came late. The boy missed the lesson.
The boy missed the lesson because he came late.
The boy missed the lesson since he came late.
Since the boy came late, he missed the lesson.

- (b) Since he was deaf, he could not hear the music.
He could not hear the music because he was deaf.
He could not hear the music since he was deaf.

- (c) I can't buy a storybook because I don't have much money.
I can't buy a storybook since I don't have much money.
Since I don't have much money, I can't buy a storybook.

Activity I

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. She tore my dress. She wanted to annoy me. (Use...**because**...)
2. The food was very tasty. We ate it all. (Begin: **Since**...)
3. Athletics is very good. It made Chemtai win a gold medal. (Use...**because**...)
4. I was starving. I ate all the food on the plate. (Use...**since**...)
5. The letter was short and lovely. I read it over and over again. (Use...**because**...)
6. The earth is shaped like a ball. We can never come to the end of it. (Use...**since**...)
7. Babirye has not gone to school because she is sick. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
8. My mother was sick. I was absent from school. (Use...**since**...)
9. Irene read very hard. She passed the examinations well. (Use...**because**...)
10. The mechanic was not at the garage. My father didn't repair his car. (Use...**because**...)
11. You have won the match. You must get a prize. (Use... **since**...)
12. Kwame is unhappy. He has broken his ruler. (Use.... **because**...)
13. Garbage collection will improve. We have a serious town clerk. (Use **because** ...)
14. Soil erosion is on the rise. They need to plant more trees. (Use ...**since** ...)
15. The cyclist was drunk. The police arrested him. (Use ... **because** ...)
16. The sea is very salty. It cannot be used for drinking water. ((Use ... **since** ...)
17. My pen is lost. I am not writing. (Use ... **because** ...)

Activity II

1. She planted her crops. She was sure the rains had started. (Use...**because**...)
2. They worked very hard. They passed highly. (Use...**since**...)
3. Sonia did not come to school last week since she was sick. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
4. The vehicles are moving slowly. There was an accident. (Use...**since**...)
5. We shall have no rain. The forests have been destroyed. (Use...**because**...)
6. He went to the clinic. He was not feeling well. (Use...**since**...)
7. There may be famine in the continent. The locusts have destroyed people's crops. (Use...**because**...)
8. You have come in time. You can help me with this work. (Begin: **Since**...)
9. The nurses used kerosene lamps. There was no power in the hospital. (Use...**because**...)
10. There were no textbooks. The teacher had to teach everything from his head. (Use...**because**...)
11. We are late. We should walk faster.

12. The dough did not rise since the baker did not add yeast. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
13. We did not play as a team. We lost the game. (Begin: Since ...)
14. The prefects will be rewarded. They have worked hard to promote discipline. (Use ... because ...)
15. She was given a receipt. She had paid all the fees. (Usesince...)
16. Petrol catches fire much more easily than kerosene. We should be very careful with it.
17. The earth is shaped like a ball. We can never get to the end of it.
18. Aluminum doesn't rust. It is often used for roofing sheets instead of corrugated iron.
19. Ike was always patient and polite. The pupils respected him
20. The African Child was first written in French. It had to be translated into English.

NOT EVEN/BARELY

Consider:

(a) Not even 20% of the pupils in our class know how to use a dictionary.

Barely 20% of the the pupils in our class know how to use a dictionary.

(b) Barely 40% of the cities in Uganda have access to safe water.

Not even 40 % of the cities in Uganda have access to safe water.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. Barely ten people returned the forms to the office. (Begin: Not even ...)
2. Not even ten candidates turned up for the interview. (Begin: Barely ...)
3. Barely twenty-one students applied to join the school. (Begin: Not even ...)
4. Not even three advertisements appeared in yesterday's newspaper. (Begin: Barely ...)
5. Barely fifteen letters were received by pupils last term. (Begin: Not even k ...)
6. Not even anybody is at the post office. (Begin: Barely ...)
7. Barely 30% of the boys could remember the answer. (Begin: Barely)

8. Not even a quarter of the class has understood what a formal letter is.(Begin: Barely ...)
9. Barely two vacancies were filled after the advert was made. (Begin: Not even...)
10. Not even 5% of the people in the world can write a creative composition. (Begin: Barely ...)

BESIDE/NEXT TO/NEAR/CLOSE TO

Beside means not far from. You can replace it with next to, near or close to.

NB: Nearby or close by means not far away.

Consider:

- (a) The fuel station is next to our home.
The fuel station is near our home.
The fuel station is beside our home.
- (b) Put the drill beside the nails.
Put the drill next to the nails.
Put the drill near the nails.
- (c) The supermarket is next to the main road.
The supermarket is near the main road.
The supermarket is beside the main road.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. She sat beside her mother. (Use...**next**...)
2. The carpenter put the varnish beside the polish. (Use...**not far**...)
3. The school canteen is next to the library. (Use...**beside**...)
4. The DVD is next to the TV set. (Use...**near**...)
5. The bank is near Kiira Road. (Use ... close ...)
6. There is a parking lot not far from the hotel. (Use ... next ...)
7. Don't put a heater close to curtains. (Use ... near ...)
8. There is an excellent restaurant nearby. (End ... close by.)
9. The supermarket is next to the main road. (Use ... not far ...)
10. We held our bash near the resort. (Use ... close ...)

SUCCEED AND MANAGE

- (a) The coach has succeeded in training the team.
- (b) The police managed to arrest the murderer.

(c) Ahmed managed to spell the word pronunciation.

Activity

1. My father managed to build a new family house. (Usesucceed....)
2. Will they succeed in talking to him? (Usemanage....)
3. We managed to beat the tough team. (Usesucceed...)
4. Was the head teacher able to convince the parents? (...manage....)
5. Sawyer failed to get a job in that bank. (Use ...succeed ...)
6. I was able to bake the cake. (Use ...manage...)
7. The tailor has succeeded in sewing two wedding dresses today. (Use manage)
8. Most of the pupils managed to write formal letters. (Usesucceed)
9. The hunters succeeded in killing the two fierce buffaloes. (Use ... managed)
10. Were they able to reach the peak of Mt. Rwenzori? (Use ... succeed ...)
11. Moses could not fell the tree. (Use ...succeed ...)
12. We swam across the river.
13. The carpenter has managed to smooth the wood. (Use ...succeed...)
- 14.

BOTH ... AND

Both...and are correlative conjunctions such as either...or, and so on. They are in this case used in pairs.

Both ... and can appear at the beginning, and within a sentence.

Consider:

- (a) My cousin has decided to spend the holiday at home. I have decided to spend the holiday at home.

Both my cousin and I have decided to spend the holiday at home.

My cousin and I have both decided to spend the holiday at home.

- (b) Jane is beautiful. Jane is wise.

Jane is both beautiful and wise.

- (c) Kakuru plays the guitar very well and so does Nyakato.

Both Kakuru and Nyakato play the guitar very well.

Kakuru and Nyakato both play the guitar very well.

- (d) Andrew had a car. Aggrey had a car.

Both Andrew and Aggrey had a car.
Andrew and Aggrey both had a car.

- (e) Andrew had cars. Aggrey had cars.
Both Andrew and Aggrey had cars.
Andrew and Aggrey both had cars.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Jeremiah is a disciplined boy. Juma is a disciplined boy. (Begin: **Both...**)
2. You would like to get married. I would like to get married. (Use ... both ... and ...)
3. The priest will pray with both the orphans and the widows. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
4. Mr. Kisitu has a house. Mr. Kisitu has a farm. (Join using...**both**...)
5. Teachers are smart. Pupils are smart. (Use...**both**... and ...)
6. An ox is pulling a plough. A bull is pulling a plough. (Begin: Both ...)
7. The wedding cake was tasty. The refreshments were tasty. (Use ...both ...and ...)
8. The party was colourful. The trip was colourful. (Begin: **Both**...)
9. A watch tells time. A clock tells time. (Begin: Both ...)
10. Mulching controls soil erosion. Terracing controls soil erosion.
11. Elijah acted in the Vampire Diaries. Klaus acted in the Vampire Diaries. (Begin: **Both**...)
12. Ted will attend the concert and so will Linda. (Begin: **Both**...)
13. My niece may travel to Kapchorwa. My nephew may travel to Kapchorwa.
(Use...**both**....and ...)
14. Michael has a wife. Mikail has a wife. (Begin: Both ...)
15. The bride was smartly dressed. The bridegroom was smartly dressed. (Use ... both
and ...)

BOTH AND EITHER

Consider:

- (a) Our captain can play football using both legs.

Our captain can play football using either leg.

(b) There were flowers on either side of the road.

There were flowers on both sides of the road.

(c) The baby eats using both hands.

The baby eats using either hand.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. The striker scored in both halves of the game. (Use ... either...)
2. We could easily tell the difference between either man. (Use ...both)
3. They found mistakes in both sections of the paper. (Use ...either....)
4. I was charged with both crimes. (End ... crime.)
5. The diners will sit at both tables in the hotel. (Use ... either)

EITHER AND TOO

Either , and or too can come at the end of a sentence. To end a sentence in ... either., it has to be negative + auxiliary + not + either, e.g.

(a) Andrew is not a good singer. Robert is not a good singer.

Andrew is not a good singer, and Robert is not either.

(b) Tom can't drive. Emma can't drive.

Tom can't drive, and Emma can't either.

NB: To end a sentence in ... too., it has to be positive + auxiliary + too., e.g.

(c) I am falling asleep. She is falling asleep.

I am falling asleep, and she is too.

Activity

Rewrite as instructed in the brackets.

1. Sheila has spent all her money. Cindy has spent all her money. (End ... too.)
2. This pen doesn't work. That pen doesn't work. (End ... either.)
3. I enjoyed the film. Yvonne enjoyed the film. (End ... too.)
4. My mother is not a seamstress. My daughter is not a seamstress. (End ... either.)
5. The teacher went on a tour. The pupils went on a tour. (End ... too.)
6. They haven't heard about it. You haven't heard about it. (End ... either.)
7. Doreen doesn't like fish. Diana doesn't like fish. (End ... either.)
8. Elizabeth was a receptive person. Emily was a receptive person. (End ... too.)
9. She won't get there in time. He won't get there in time. (End Either.)
10. Bashes are interesting. Picnics are interesting. (End ... too.)

CHARGED WITH/ ACCUSED OF/BLAMED FOR

Charged is usually followed by with while accused is followed by of. They are both compound prepositions

Consider:

- (a) Nalule was accused of misconduct before the elders.
- (b) The man was charged with theft.
- (c) The girl will be accused of cheating in exams.

Activity

Complete each of the following items with a suitable word.

1.

PREFER AND LIKE

You use this structure to show that you like one thing more than another.

Consider:

- (a) I like singing more than dancing.
- (b) They like English. They like Luganda more.
- (c) Sylvialikes rice. She likes spaghetti very much.

Activity

Join each of the following pairs using ...prefer...

1. Children like playing. They like watching cartoons so much.
2. I am more interested in sewing than knitting.
3. I prefer watching movies to playing chess. (Uselike)
4. The love music. They love food so much.
5. Father liked telling stories more than listening to them.
6. She likes cutting a cake. She doesn't like putting on a ring very much.
7. Young children would rather drink than eat.
8. Most girls like dancing more than knitting.
9. Do you prefer reading to writing? (Use ... like)
10. She was more interested in knitting than weaving when she was in Primary Six.

ALL ANDEVERY

You use a singular noun and a singular verb after every, e.g.

Consider:

- (a) All children in our class can speak Latin. (Begin: **Every...**)
Every child in our class can speak Latin.
- (b) Every tree has leaves. (Begin: **All...**)
All trees have leaves.
- (c) All the things in the town have changed.
Everything in the town has changed.
- (d) Every woman should get married. (Begin: **All...**)
All women should get married.
- (e) All the houses in the street are the same.

Every house in the street is the same.

- (f) Everybody makes mistakes.
All people make mistakes.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. All insects have six legs. (Begin: **Every...**)
2. Every stranger has to be checked before entering the school premises. (Begin: **All...**)
3. Every citizen must have an identity card. (Begin: **All...**)
4. All birds can fly. (Begin: **Every...**)
5. Everybody should fight for their freedom. (Begin: **All...**)
6. All pedestrians must follow traffic rules. (Begin: **Every...**)
7. Every candidate must remember to write his or her index number. (Begin: **All...**)
8. Every person must learn to apologise. (Begin: **All...**)
9. All countries have national flags. (Begin: **Every ...**)
10. Every king needs an heir. (Begin: **All...**)
11. All people need friends. (Begin: **Everybody ...**)
12. Have you got all the things you need? (Use ... everything ...)
13. I have looked in all places. (End ... everywhere.)
14. Everyone has problems. (Begin: **All ...**)
15. There were papers everywhere. (End ... all places.)
16. Every classroom was given furniture last term. (Begin: **All**)

ASSOONAS/IMMEDIATELY/THE MOMENT

This structure is used when two things happen almost at the same time, one following the other.

Consider:

- (a) The guest of honour arrived. We sang the anthems.

As soon as the guest of honour arrived, we sang the anthems.

We sang the anthems as soon as the guest of honour arrived.

Immediately the guest of honour arrived, we sang the anthems.

We sang the anthems immediately the guest of honour arrived.

The moment the guest of honour arrived, we sang the anthems

We sang the anthems the moment the guest of honour arrived.

(b) Hardly had the cashier sat down when he began to count the money.

As soon as the cashier sat down, he began to count the money.

The cashier began to count the money as soon as he sat down.

(c) No sooner had the rains begun than the farmers sowed their seeds.

Immediately the rains began, the farmers sowed their seeds.

The farmers sowed their seeds immediately the rains began.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. The moment he received the news, he was overjoyed. (Begin: As soon as ...)
2. The pupils heard the bell. They ran out for breakfast. (Begin: The moment ...)
3. I had no sooner sat in the armchair than I fell asleep. (Use ...as soon as ...)
4. We started conversing immediately the meeting ended. (Begin: Immediately ...)
5. Barely had we reached the bridge when we crossed the river. (Use ...as soon as ...)
6. The mechanic repaired the car. The car broke down. (Begin: The moment the car ...)
7. Immediately the war was over, a new nation was born. (Usethe moment ...)
8. The car reached the zebra crossing. The driver reduced speed. (Begin: As soon as ...)
9. He cut off one of the monster's heads. Two others grew in its place. (Begin: As soon as ...)
10. The moment we reached the taxi park, we alighted from the car. (Use ...as soon as ...)

BY WHOM/TO WHOM?

Consider:

(a) Who swept our classroom today?

By whom was our classroom swept today?

(b) By whom has my cup been broken?

Who has broken my cup?

(c) Who drove the school van?

By whom was the school van driven?

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Who abused my good friend? (Begin: **By whom...**)
2. By whom was this balloon burst? (Begin: Who ...)
3. Whose gold rings are these? (Begin: To whom...)
4. Saidat made that timetable. (Begin: By whom ...)
5. Who is the owner of these green cups? (Begin: To whom ...)
6. To whom does this house belong? (Begin: Who ...)
7. Who dyed your hair? (Begin: By whom ...)
8. To whom did you talk? (Begin: Whom ...)
9. By whom was this letter written? (Begin: Who ...)
10. Who tore this paper into pieces? (Begin: By whom ...)

SO

So means

(a) We shall have peace in the country since more security officers have been trained.

More security officers have been trained, so we shall have peace in the country.

(b) Petrol catches fire easily. You should be careful with it.

Petrol catches fire easily, so you should be careful with it.

Activity

Rewrite each item using so

1 We shall have peace in the country since more security officers have been trained.

BESIDES

Besides means *apart from* or in addition to. Do not confuse this with *beside* which means *next to*. It can appear at the beginning and within the sentence.

Consider:

- (a) The carpenter made a table. He made a chair.
Besides making a table, the carpenter made a chair.
The carpenter made a table besides a chair.
- (b) Isabirye keeps goats. He also keeps sheep.
Besides keeping goats, Isabirye keeps sheep.
Isabirye keeps goats besides sheep.
- (c) Pretty is a young girl. She is innocent.
Besides being a young girl, Pretty is innocent.
Pretty is a young girl besides being innocent.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Bright likes to read. He likes to write. (use ...**besides**....)
2. Robert is a baker. Robert is a butcher. (Begin: **Besides**...)
3. Kiprotich runs. He advertises. (Begin: **Besides**...)
4. Musa is a clever boy. Musa is a fast runner. (Use besides)
5. The Baker made not only buns but also cookies. (Begin: Besides ...)
6. The tailor made a suit. The tailor ironed it. (Use ... besides ...)
7. Apart from buying airtime, Sam bought data. (Begin: In addition)
8. Andrew speaks fluent English. Andrew speaks fluent Spanish. (Use ... besides ...)
9. We bought softwood in addition to hardwood. (Use ... apart from ...)
10. He planed the planks on top of sharpening the saw. (Begin: Besides ...)
11. Sandra owns two cars. She owns two posh houses. (Use ... besides ...)
12. William smoothed wood. William cut the wood into small pieces. (Begin: Besides ...)
13. The chef cooks beef stew. The chef cooks fish. (Use ... besides)
14. Angela is lazy. She is also shabby. (Begin: Apart from ...)
15. Isabella bought books apart from borrowing some. (Begin: Besides ...)
16. Zidoolo is both an editor and a columnist. (Begin: Besides)

EVER CLAUSES

These are found in whoever, whatever, whenever, whichever, wherever, however, and so on.

NB: Whoever means it doesn't matter who.

What do you think is the meaning of the other expressions?

Consider:

- (a) Every time I am not sure of the word, I look it up in the dictionary.

Whenever I am not sure of the word, I look it up in the dictionary.

I look up the word in the dictionary whenever I am not sure of it.

- (b) Everyone who bears children should cater for them.

Whoever bears children should cater for them.

- (c) Henry read so hard. He did not perform well.

However hard Henry read, he did not perform well.

Henry did not perform well however hard he read.

- (d) You will not sit for exams. You failed to pay the fees.

Whoever failed to pay the fees will not sit for exams.

- (e) Every time I fall sick, I see a doctor.

Whenever I fall sick, I see a doctor.

I see a doctor whenever I fall sick.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. Every time my child develops complications, I visit a pediatrician. (Begin: Whenever ...)
2. Every time the weather gets cold, Rebecca wears a heavy sweater. (Use ... whenever ...)
3. Our teacher talks about the dangers of early marriage every time he conducts lessons. (Begin: Whenever ...)
4. Anyone who crosses the busy road carelessly will be knocked down. (Begin: Whoever ...)
5. Whenever I come early to school, our class teacher gives me sweets. (Begin: Every time ...)
6. If you want to spell the words correctly, follow the spelling rules. (Use ... whenever ...)
7. If you want to treat your eyes, visit an ophthalmologist. (Begin: Whenever ...)
8. If they don't want to use a dictionary, they read an encyclopedia. (Use ... whenever ...)
9. Refer to a thesaurus if you are looking for synonyms of words. (Use ... whenever ...)

10. Write your speech every time you want to deliver an electric presentation. (Begin: Whenever ...)

WHAT CLAUSES

Consider:

- (a) We need peace in Uganda.
What we need is peace in Uganda.
- (b) What the patient needs is a long rest. (End...needs)
A long rest is what the patient needs.
- (c) Pupils need to observe rules and regulations.
What pupils need is to observe rules and regulations.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

- 1. What the workers need is supervision. (Begin: Supervision...)
- 2. Shortage of money prevents quicker development. (Begin: What...)
- 3. He is suffering from malaria. (Begin: What...)
- 4. She needs a husband. (End ...need.)
- 5. The government must decide when to reopen schools. (Begin: What...)
- 6. I would like to become a lawyer after leaving school. (Begin: **What...**)

FOR, SINCE AND AGO

For shows a length of time, e.g. for two hours, for a long time, for a few days, etc.

Since shows a particular point in time in the past, e.g. since 2000, since morning, since 5:00pm, etc.

Ago comes at the end of the sentence, and it is connected with the past simple tense, e.g. two days ago, a while ago, a fortnight ago, five minutes ago, etc.

Consider:

- (a) He started waiting for the visitor at 9:00am. It is 12:00pm. He is still waiting for the visitor.
He has been waiting for the visitor for three hours.
He has been waiting for the visitor since 9:00am.
- (b) The prisoners have not had food for two days.
It is two days now since the prisoners had food.
The prisoners last had food two days ago.
- (c) Santa started crying in the morning. It is now noon and she is still crying.
Santa has been crying since morning.
Santa has been crying for six hours.
- (d) They began learning two weeks ago.
They have been learning for two weeks.
It is two weeks now since they began learning.
- (e) Our school has not organized any tour for five years.
Our school last organized a tour five years ago.
It is five years now since our school organized a tour.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. It is three years now since I saw my aunt. (Begin: **I last...**)
2. We have waited here from evening up to now. (Use...**since...**)
3. They have been watching television from ten o'clock in the morning. It is now two in the afternoon and they are still watching. (Use..**for...**)
4. My mother began peeling matooke in the afternoon. She is still peeling matooke. (Use...**since...**)
5. I started studying Latin two years ago and I am still studying it. (Use...**since...**)
6. It is three months now since I last saw her. (Begin: **I haven't...**)
7. I last saw Joan a fortnight ago. (Use...**since...**)
8. I haven't met my father for twelve years. (End...**ago.**)
9. We began walking yesterday. We are still walking. (Begin: **We have...**)
10. Mr. Aguto has been making bridal gowns for nine years. (Use....**since...**)
11. It is ten months since I last talked to my uncle. (Use ...**for...**)
12. It started raining last night. It is still raining. (Use ...**since....**)
13. It is five days since Dr Amos talked to us. (End ...**ago.**)
14. Tina started revising at 8 o'clock. It is now 8:50 am and she is still revising. (Use**for...**)
15. The fishmonger began selling fish three days ago. (Use ...**since...**)
16. Kasule went to the library at 10.00 a.m. He is still in the library. (Use **since**)

...BUT¹...

This is an expression of contrast just like although.

Consider:

- (f) Our football team played very well. We lost the match.
- (g) Debora danced very nicely. She did not receive a gift.
- (h) I paid school fees. The bursar did not give me a receipt.
- (i) My grandfather was very rich. He was blind.
- (j) Alice was sick. She got a first grade.

Activity

Join each of the following pairs usingbut...

1. An elephant is not fast. An elephant is very strong.
 2. The traffic officer warned the driver. The driver did not mind.
- 22.**

WHILE AND WHEN

While is a conjunction meaning when or whilst. It talks about two activities happening at the same time. While may also express a contrast.

Consider:

- (a) I was waiting at the bus stop. Three buses went by in the opposite direction.
While I was waiting at the bus stop, three buses went by in the opposite direction.
- (b) While we were asleep, we were burgled.
When we were asleep, we were burgled.
We were burgled while we were asleep.
- (c) One of the babies started crying. We were travelling.
While we were travelling, one of the babies started crying.

Activity I

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. Mr. Lubega was registering pupils. Mr. Sentongo was checking pupils' temperatures.
(Begin: **While...**)
2. The passengers were getting off the bus. Mukasa hurt his knee. (Use...**while...**)

¹ P.6, 2nd Term: Tailoring

3. Ms. Catherine was teaching. Rema beat Linda. (Begin: **While...**)
4. Our father was milking the cows. Our mother was winnowing the millet. (Use...**while...**)
5. As Serena was reading the newspaper, Nancy was watching cartoons. (Begin: **While...**)
6. They were travelling to Kasese. They saw an elephant. (Use...**while...**)
7. As the girls were reciting the poem, the boys were reading a storybook. (Begin: **While...**)
8. The chairperson was giving the opening remarks. The secretary made a face. (Begin: **While...**)
9. The invigilator checked all the candidates. Martha was away. (Use...**when...**)
10. Joan was sewing. The needle pierced her. (Use...**while...**)
11. The tourist travelled by plane. The pupils used a bus. (Begin: **While...**)
12. The passengers were talking. The man was driving. (Use...**while...**)
13. The guest was seated. The children were singing. (Begin: **While...**)
14. The children will be entertained by Mariam. The children will come for the holiday. (Begin: **When...**)
- 15.

Activity II

1. Seguya came very quickly. He heard his father calling. (Use...**when...**)
2. The thief jumped out. The bus was speeding. (Use...**while...**)
3. We were eating. Our parents quarreled. (Begin: **While...**)
4. They were running laps. The girl fainted. (Use...**while...**)
5. Juma fell off a mango tree. He was looking for a bird's nest. (Begin: **While...**)

AS ...

As is a conjunction meaning while something else is happening. It may also be used to express a reason.

Consider:

- (a) It was very late. I did not go to the well.
As it was very late, I did not go to the well.
- (b) The girl jumped off the bicycle. Musa was riding it.
As Musa was riding the bicycle, the girl jumped off.
- (c) Sarah was slicing onions. She cut her finger.
As Sarah was slicing onions, she cut her finger.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. I did not speak to him. He was in a hurry. (Begin: **As...**)
2. She was not in the office. I left her message with the secretary. (Use...**as...**)
3. We sat watching the children. They were getting ready. (Begin: **As...**)
4. You grew older. You gained confidence. (Use...**as...**)
5. The girl was told to go home because there was no food in the store. (Begin: **As...**)
6. The door would not open. I had forgot the key. (Use...**as...**)
7. The good grass is soon eaten. The cows have to be driven from one place to another. (Begin: **As...**)

WISH CLAUSES

The verb wish is usually followed by a past verb form. Its meaning is however not necessarily past.

Consider:

I am not tall.

She is married

We can't win the match.

It won't rain heavily this season.

Sheila isn't here.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items beginning: I wish....

1. I don't have many friends.
2. She can't play a piano.
3. It won't happen again.
4. He is not tall.

Activity II

Complete each of the items using the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. I wish you _____ well at school. (do)
2. I wish she _____ well. (feel)
3. I wish we _____ some water. (take)

4. I wish you ____ seen the movie. (has)
5. I wish s he ____ cook. (can)
6. I wish she had ____ needlework. (have)
7. I wish I ____ you well. (know)

Wish is always followed by a past tense or the conditional (would), never by a future or present. We use *wish* to express regrets about the present i.e. to say that we should like something to be different.

NB: You may choose to use ***If only*** instead of *I wish*.

Consider:

- (a) Nothing exciting will happen.
I wish something exciting would happen.
If only something exciting would happen.
- (b) Nothing exciting is happening.
I wish something exciting was happening.
- (c) Nothing exciting happened.
I wish something exciting had happened.
- (d) English isn't easy.
I wish English was easy.
- (e) You didn't ask me to come.
I wish you had asked me to come.
- (f) I won't rain.
I wish it would rain.
- g) She is too horrible to me.
I wish she wasn't too horrible to me.
- h) She cannot play a guitar.
I wish she could play a guitar.

Activity

Rewrite each item beginning with I wish...

1. I haven't a job.
2. They won't send me any money.

3. I don't know all the answers.
4. The book wasn't interesting.
5. We didn't win.
6. You won't help me with my prep.
7. My sister isn't married.
8. We can't go for a walk this evening.
9. The government won't pay my expenses.
10. You won't stop making a noise.

Activity II

1. I didn't meet you earlier.
2. The term isn't over.
3. My mother didn't keep the photograph.
4. The engine won't start.
5. They didn't give us more soup.
6. That girl doesn't like me.
7. You didn't see me score that goal.
8. He won't close the window.
9. She won't burn my letter.
10. I don't feel well.

Activity III

Rewrite beginning If only...

1. I am so shy.
2. I don't know what to say to people.
3. I find it difficult to make friends.
4. I am not good-looking.
5. My ears are so big.
6. I get embarrassed so quickly.
7. My students didn't do their homework.
8. My mother died a young lady.
9. I am the poorest in this village.

I don't have enough money to buy a new house

REQUESTS

These are polite phrases to ask for something. You use verbs such as may, can, could, will, would, and so on.

Consider:

- (a) May I come in, please?
- (b) Would you mind waiting outside?
- (c) Will you marry me?
- (d) Can I borrow your pen?
- (e) Would you mind if I had the menu?

Activity

1. I would like to raise a point of information. (Begin: May.....)
2. Can you tell me your age, please? (Begin: How?)
3. May I go home and help my parents? (Begin: I would)
4. Do you mind if I join you? (Begin: May I ...)
5. Would you like if I looked at the letter? (Begin: I would like ...)
6. I would like to ask you a question. (Begin: May I)
7. May I smoke from here, please? (Begin: Do you mind ...)
8. Is it alright if I keep this photo? (Begin: Would you mind ...)
9. May I borrow your bicycle, please? (Begin: Can I . ..)
10. Would you mind if I looked at the files myself? (Begin: Do you)
11. Lend me your pen. (Begin: May I ...?)
- 12.

HOMOPHONES

A homophone is a word that is pronounced like another word but has a different spelling or meaning, e.g.

- (a) sun, son
The sun is a natural source of light.
My son is happy.
- (b) some, sum
Sue needs some money.
I have a large sum of money.
- (c) test, taste
The teacher has just given us a test.

What is the taste of that ice cream?

(d) bun, burn

I bought this bun from the baker's.

Fire can burn you.

(e) live, leave

We live in Murema.

Henry wants to leave this village.

NB: While using such words to show that you understand the difference in their meanings, do not change their tense or form at all.

Activity

Use each of the given words in a sentence to show that you know the difference in their meanings.

1. pull, pool
2. weather, whether
3. diary, dairy
4. lose, loose
5. break, brake
6. sight, site
7. advice, advise
8. practice, practise
9. quite, quiet
10. hurt, heart
11. hit, heat
12. sin, scene
13. port, pot
14. full, fool
15. their, there

JUMBLED SENTENCES

Consider:

(a) Believe Do? God in you

Do you believe in God?

- (b) good Greeting behaviour is others.
Greeting others is good behaviour.
- (c) road use side pedestrians Which the should of?
Which side of the road should pedestrians use?

Activity

Rearrange the words below to form meaningful sentences.

1. Extremely This examination is easy.
2. You will when? sit P.L.E. your
3. Is Benjamin nor a doctor David neither.
4. Is this high mountain How!
5. Like a looks what train know I.
6. Did before indicate turning he?
7. Bought has feeds farmer the animal.
8. You May visit tomorrow I?
9. Division I passed and Matthew one have in.
10. An elephant What look does like?
11. Pair is Charles' of That scissors.
12. Dirty was the very table cloth.
13. Your are of nationality What parents?
14. Ceremony it during rained marriage heavily the.
15. Mechanic vehicle did when your the repair?

PUNCTUATION

Punctuation helps you to read correctly. Some of the punctuation marks are the full stop, question mark, comma, exclamation mark, colon, apostrophe, quotation mark, capitalisation, and so on. Learning where to put these marks helps a lot.

Consider:

(a) the luggage said the conductor is very heavy.

“The luggage,” said the conductor “is very heavy.”

(b) she is my sister

She is my sister.

Activity

Rewrite and punctuate each of the following items correctly.

1. how old are you
2. We need eggs bread milk flour and butter
3. michael's ball is over there
4. Are you going out tonight she asked
5. I wonder said natalia when we will get our results
6. She is reading Oliver twist by Charles dickens
7. what a skilful carpenter mrmusoke is
8. have you been to kampala before
9. the boys as well as the girls were overjoyed
10. Yes I would like to come
11. Can I get glass of water please
12. Oh has he arrived
13. Well I don't know
14. They met victoriassister at the hairdressers
15. How funny that man is
16. I was wrong she admitted
17. Be quiet
18. the Nile is the longest river in africa
19. Uganda has several lakes lake lakevictorialake albert lake kyoga and others

20. She'd like to become a medical doctor.

ANALOGIES

This is a comparison of one with another thing that has similar features. Do you think there is an analogy between the human heart and the pump? You Sometimes learn by analogy.

Consider:

- (f) Optician is to eye as dentist is to tooth.
- (g) Daughter is to son as spinster is to bachelor.
- (h) Sheep is to mutton as goat is to chevon.
- (i) Knife is to cut as gun is to shoot.
- (j) Buy is to bought as catch is to caught.

Activity

Fill the blank space with a suitable word.

<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. One is to single as two is to ____.2. Thumb is to palm as toe is to ____.3. Drive is to drove as seek is to ____.4. Cat is to kitten as _____ is to kid.5. Dog is to bitch as stallion is to ____.6. Barber is to _____ as butcher is to butcher's.7. Poetry is to stanza as ____ is to paragraph.8. Fifty is to golden as a hundred is to ____.9. North is to South as East is to ____.10. Elbow is to hand as knee is to ____.11. Food is to hunger as drink is to ____.12. ____ is to bow as bullet is to gun.13. Boy is to scout as girl is to ____.14. Station is to train as ____ is to aeroplane.15. Doctor is to patient as landlord is to ____.16. Where is to place as when us to ____.17. Roof is to house as peak is to ____.18. King is to Queen as dog is to ____.19. Princess is to prince as ____ is to stallion.20. Sun is to day as ____ is to night.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">27. Feed is to food as graze is to ____.28. Wing is to fly as leg is to ____.29. Occultist is to _____ as dentist is to teeth.30. Reading is to writing as speaking is to ____.31. Year is to month as day is to ____.32. Anger is to angry as ____ is to hungry.33. Lie is to lying as dye is to ____.34. Die is to dying as lie is to ____.35. Many is to more as shy is to ____.36. Snake is to hiss as hen is to ____.37. Sun is to sunny as rain is to ____.38. Well is to better as ill is to ____.39. Deep is to shallow as poor is to ____.40. Nine is to ninth as twelve is to ____.41. One is to once as three is to ____.42. Nephew is to uncle as ____ is to aunt.43. Ink is to pen as ____ is to engine.44. Lion is to _____ as wolf is to pack.45. Blood is to red as sky is to ____.46. Sheep is to ____ as cow is to milk.47. Broom is to sweep as scissors is to ____.
---	---

21. Shabby is to shabbily as tidy is to ____. 22. Pronounce is to ____ as maintain is to maintenance. 23. France is to French as Ghana is to ____. 24. Hoof is to hooves as ox-plough is to ____. 25. . 26. Twenty is to twentieth as ninety is to _____.	48. Bee is to hive as byre is to _____. 49. 50. Netherlands is to Dutch as Togo is to _____. 51. Praise is to blame as success is to _____. 52. Gander is to _____ as scout is to guide. 53. Ewe is to ram as duck is to _____. 54. Finger is to hand as _____ is to foot
--	---

QUESTIONS AND RESPONSES

Consider:

- (a) How do you feel?
I feel very tired.
- (b) Did the barber take a long time to cut your hair?
Yes, the barber took a long time to cut off my hair.
- (c) What is his first name?
His first name is Musa.

Activity

Write a question to each of the following responses.

- That is Isaac's magazine.
- It doesn't rain in summer.
- This basket was woven by my cousin.
- My cousin wove this basket.
- I went to the field in order to play cricket.
- A car takes three hours to reach Kasese.
- The school bursar has gone to the bank to withdraw some money.
- She spent her first term with her great aunt.
- I think it is not right to judge a book by its cover.
- My favourite series of all times is the "Vampire Diaries".
- No, she doesn't like going out.

12. The poem has three stanzas.
13. Yes, I can spell the word Ghanaian.
14. Henry often goes to the garage on Wednesday.
15. The government should imprison idlers to stop crime.
16. Yes, she withdrew all the money on her bank account.

NEED TO/NEED FOR/NECESSARY

You use need to and need for to say that something is necessary.

Consider:

- (a) There is need for the farmhouse to be tidied.
The farmhouse needs to be tidied.
It is necessary for the farmhouse to be tidied.
- (b) She needs to load airtime in order to make a phone call.
It is necessary for her to load airtime in order to make a phone call.
There is need for her to load airtime in order to make a phone call.
- (c) They need to get a new maid.
There is need for them to get a new maid.
It is necessary for them to get a new maid.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. There is need for her to behave well. (Useneed to...)
2. We need to save money for future use. (Use ...necessary...)
3. It is necessary for you to be selfless. (Use ...need to...)
4. It is necessary for candidates to revise in time. (Use ...need for...)
5. Every man should have a wife. (Begin: It is necessary...)
6. Pedestrians must cross the road carefully. (Useneed....)
7. Pupils need to observe rules and regulations. (Use necessary....)
8. It is necessary for parents to educate their children. (Use ...need to....)
9. Leah needs to plant more trees in the orchard. (Begin: There)
10. There is need for citizens to love their country. (Use necessary...)
11. Elders need to be responsible. (Useneed for)

12. You should file all your past papers. (Usedneed)
13. We must heed to teacher's advice. (Used ...need to)
14. Drivers should avoid overloading vehicles. (Use ... necessary)

...NEEDN'T.../NECESSARY

You use *needn't* to say that something is not necessary. Avoid the word *to* immediately after *needn't*.

Consider:

- (a) They do not need to buy an empty CD.
They needn't buy an empty CD.
- (b) It is not necessary for him to shout at the news reporter.
He needn't shout at the news reporter.
- (c) You do not have to be cruel to animals.
You needn't be cruel to animals.
- (d) It is not necessary for her to switch off the radio.
She needn't switch off the radio.
- (e) The duty master needn't ring the bell twice.
It is not necessary for the duty master to ring the bell twice.

Activity I

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. She doesn't have to dock the sheep. (Use ... needn't ...)
2. Kamoga needn't board a taxi to the market. (Begin: It is)
3. People needn't be selfish. (Use ... necessary....)
4. Herdsmen don't need to torture the cattle. (Begin: Herdsmen needn't ...)
5. A veterinary surgeon needn't treat animals harshly. (Begin: A veterinary surgeon)
6. Robert does not need to tie his goat on the bicycle carrier. (Use necessary)
7. It is not necessary for a ranger to frighten the monkeys. (Useneedn't)
8. The farmers don't have to stone the birds. (Begin: It is)
9. It is not necessary for Susan to run so fast. (Begin: Susan needn't ...)
10. You do not need to keep the animals in captivity. (Usenecessary)
11. It is not necessary for passengers to alight from a moving vehicle. (Begin: The passengers needn't ...)
- 12.

Activity II

Rewrite each item usingnecessary...

13. You needn't waste time on useless things.
14. Peter needn't be selfish.
15. Dan needn't abuse his father.
16. You needn't buy a phone for your little sister.
17. They needn't call their parents every time they fall sick.
18. Samantha needn't spend a lot of money on airtime.
19. We needn't be afraid of spiders.
20. She doesn't have to dress indecently.
21. You needn't abuse strangers.
22. We needn't be selfish.

....NEEDN'T HAVE/...NECESSARY....

You use *needn't have* to say that something was not necessary. Use a passive verb after *have*, e.g. *seen, done, eaten, cleaned, swept*, etc.

Consider:

- (a) They did not need to buy an empty CD.
They needn't have bought an empty CD.
- (b) It was not necessary for him to shout at the news reporter.
He needn't have shouted at the news reporter.
- (c) You did not have to be cruel to animals.
You needn't have been cruel to animals.
- (d) It was not necessary for her to switch off the radio.
She needn't have switched off the radio.
- (e) The duty master had rung the bell twice.
It was not necessary for the duty master to ring the bell twice.

Activity I

Rewrite each item using.needn't.....

1. She didn't have to dock the sheep.
2. It was not necessary for people to be selfish.
3. It was not necessary for Kamoga to board a taxi to the market.
4. Herdsmen didn't need to torture the cattle.
5. The veterinary officer didn't have to treat animals harshly.
6. Robert did not need to tie his goat on the bicycle carrier.
7. It was not necessary for a ranger to frighten the monkeys.
8. The farmers didn't have to stone the birds.
9. It was not necessary for Susan to run so fast.
10. You did not need to keep the animals in captivity.
11. You bought more milk although it was not necessary.
12. The ranger should not have frightened the monkeys.

Activity II

Rewrite each item usingnecessary...

13. You needn't have wasted time on useless things.
14. Peter needn't have been selfish.
15. Dan needn't have abused his father.
16. You needn't buy a phone for your little sister.
17. They needn't have called their parents every time they fell sick.
18. Samantha needn't have spent a lot of money on airtime.
19. We needn't have been afraid of spiders.
20. She didn't have to dress indecently.
21. You needn't have abused strangers.
22. We needn't have been selfish.
23. We should load airtime in order to make phone calls. (Useneed....)
- 24.

...AS WELL AS ...

This structure is used to mean together with. Given one subject and two activities, no commas are expected. Given two subjects and one activity, two commas are applied.

Consider:

- (a) Musa is a teacher. Musa is a farmer.
Musa is a teacher as well as a farmer.
- (b) Miriam is a social worker. Miranda is a social worker.
Miriam, as well as Miranda, is a social worker.
- (c) The dictionary was useful. The atlas was useful.
The dictionary, as well as the atlas, was a useful book.
- (d) Both Joan and Susan were teachers.
Joan, as well as Susan, was a teacher.
- (e) Both terracing and crop rotation are good practices.
Terracing, as well as crop rotation, is a good practice.
- (f) The moon was bright. The stars were bright.
The moon, as well as the stars, was bright.
- (g) The stars were bright. The moon was bright.
The stars, as well as the moon, were bright.

Activity I

Join each of the following pairs of items using ...as well as...

1. I like popular music. I like country music.

2. She is a politician. She is a doctor.
3. Bush burning causes environmental degradation. Overgrazing causes environmental degradation.
4. Kamara is clever. Kamara is hardworking.
5. Muhumuza has a radio. Muhumuza has a television.
6. Akiki is blind. Amoti is blind.
7. Ketty is a presenter. Kevin is a presenter.
8. Kategaya was a minister. Rwamirama was a minister.
9. We ate matooke. We ate posho.
10. A policeman and a carpenter are important people in our community.
11. Andrew is hardworking. Monica is hardworking.
12. Both the bride and the groom smiled broadly.
13. Drivers should be careful on the road. Pedestrians should be careful on the road.
14. Lions live in the jungle. Elephants live in the jungle.
15. A bird can fly. An aeroplane can fly.

Activity II

1. Peter is a candidate. Patricia is a candidate.
2. Both Lydia and Linda go to school.
3. Wind will erode the soil. Rain will erode the soil.
4. Both Margaret and Linnet did the test.
5. Animals need protection. Children need protection.
6. Songs educate people. Talk shows educate people.
7. AIDS is a deadly disease. Cancer is a deadly disease.
8. The seamstress and the tailor were invited to the bash.
9. Drapers are useful. Jewellers are useful.
10. Nancy respects class rules and regulations. Her classmates respect class rules and regulations.
11. The keyboard is faulty. The mouse is faulty.

...OR ELSE.../ ...IF NOT SO .../ ...OTHERWISE..

Or else means otherwise or if not so. It is used within the sentence. The first part before *or else* should have an advice clause, e.g. should/must, etc.

Consider:

- (a) If you don't wash your hands, you may catch corona virus.
You should wash your hands, or else you may catch corona virus.
- (b) You won't pass if you don't write neatly.
You should write neatly, or else you won't pass.
- (c) Revise your notes in time –otherwise, you may not understand them.
You must revise your notes in time, or else you may not understand them.

(d) You must follow the instructions. Your paper won't be marked.
You must follow the instructions, or else your paper won't be marked.

(e) You will not get what you want unless you speak politely.
You should speak politely, or else you won't get what you want.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items usingor else...

1. The cows will not produce enough milk if you don't feed them well.
2. Sharpen your pencil if you want it to draw nice pictures.
3. You should pay registration fees. You won't be allowed to sit the final exams.
4. Candidates must write their names on the examination papers. Their results won't be returned.
5. Nora must avoid bad groups. She may get spoilt.
6. You will be disqualified if you cheat.
7. You won't understand anything if you don't pay attention.
8. If you don't take a balanced diet, you may get stunted growth.
9. If you don't change your ways, you will be dismissed from school.
10. If you don't go right now, you won't catch the first train.
11. Listen to advice. You may get into trouble.
12. Students should not cheat in exams if not so, they will be disqualified.
13. If the secretary does not get a notebook, she will not record all our views.
14. You should cross the road carefully or else you will get an accident. (Use ... don't)
15. You should cross the road carefully or else you will get an accident. (Use ... don't ...)

Activity II

1. You will miss the prize if you write wrong answers.
2. If you want to pass exams, you should pay attention in class.
3. Keep your body well, so you will not fall sick.
4. Mwanje should stop stealing if not so, he will be arrested.
5. Schools must follow SOPs. If not, they will be closed.
6. The farmers have to spray their crops. If not, the pests will destroy the crops.
7. If you don't write well, you will lose marks.
8. Muliika must train very hard. He will fail the medical.
9. Unless the tailor uses the razorblade carefully, it will hurt him.
10. She will be disqualified if she cheats in exams.
11. We must go now, otherwise we'll be late.
12. Put the leaflet in your bag, if not so, you will lose it.

13.

...LIKELY TO...

This structure is used when you think that something will happen. The negative form is *not likely to*.

Consider:

- (a) Making wrong friends may affect your studies.
Making wrong friends is likely to affect your studies.
- (b) Drinking unboiled water will make you sick.
Drinking unboiled water is likely to make you sick.
- (c) Mistreating your children might take you to prison.
Mistreating your children is likely to take you to prison.
- (d) Janet won't post the letter without a stamp.
Janet is not likely to post the letter without a stamp.
- (e) They may sit their test next week.
They are likely to sit their test next week.

Activity

Rewrite each item using ...*likely*....

1. We may miss the train.
2. The dry spell is expected to last for two months.
3. She may not come tomorrow.
4. This year's candidates expect to pass with flying colours.
5. Shall we attend the quiz next week?
6. It may rain heavily this season.
7. Sawyer may not take part in the athletics.
8. They may break up for holidays this week.
9. Will the pupils enjoy the picnic?
10. We expect to be appreciated by our parents.
11. Tickets may be expensive.
12. She might visit her uncle this holiday.
13. We may cry if our team loses the match.
14. I may not consider his offer.
15. They may register better performance this year.

Activity II

1. Early marriage may cause problems.
2. Shortage of medication may lead to death.
3. Mistreating children might cause suffering at home.
4. Is it possible that we shall host the president?
5. I shall study dentistry at university.

SINGLE WORD FOR MANY

abattoir	A place where animals are slaughtered
affectionately	In an affectionate way
ambulance	A vehicle for transporting patients
anchorman	The main host of a TV or radio news programme
attentive	Listening carefully
autopsy/post – mortem	A medical examination of a corpse
baker	A person who sells bread, cakes, sweets, etc.
baker's	A place where bread, cakes, sweets, etc. are sold
barber	A person who cuts people's hair
barber's	A place where people's hair is cut
beef	Meat of a cow/bull
bevy	A group of beautiful women
bitch	A female dog
bridesmaid	A girl who takes care of the bride
boot	A luggage space at the back of a car/bus, etc.
bouquet	A bunch of flowers
breakfast	First meal of the day
bridal gown	A long dress worn by a bride at her wedding ceremony

bride	A woman/ girl who is getting married
bridegroom/groom	A man who is getting married
bridesmaid	A girl/woman who helps a bride during her wedding
bride price	Money and property that a husband pays to his wife's family
broadcast	To send out programmes to be received by TV or radio.
bullock	A young bull
butcher	A person who sells meat
butcher's	A place where meat is sold
calf	A young cow/elephant
candidates	Pupils waiting to sit their final examinations
carjack	A tool used for lifting a car when it is being fixed
cemetery	A place where the dead are laid to rest
channel	A television or radio station and the programmes it broadcasts
choir	A group of singers
circular	Made of circle
comfortably	In a comfortable way
concert	An occasion at which musicians, etc. perform before an audience
condolence	Message of sympathy to somebody who has lost a loved one
conductor	A man who collects fare in a taxi
conductress	A woman who collects fare in a taxi
congregation	People attending a church/mosque service
cook	A person who prepares food
corpse	A dead body
costume	Clothes worn by actors, swimmers, etc.
couple	Two people in a romantic relationship

cremains	The ashes of a cremated body
cremate	To burn a dead to ashes
crematorium	A place where dead bodies are burnt
crockery/ utensils	Cups, plates, saucers, etc.
cutlery	Knives, forks and spoons
cyclist	A person who rides a bicycle/motorcycle/unicycle
daily	Every day
dairy	A place where milk is sold
decide	Make up your mind
dental surgeon	A teeth surgeon
deposit	To put money in a bank/mobile account
diary	A book for recording daily events
dirty	To make something dirty
dowry	Money and property that a woman's family gives to her husband
draper	A person who sells clothes
draper's	A place where clothes are sold
dropout	One who leaves school before completing studies
duck	Meat of a duck/drake
easily	In an easy way
embalm/mummify	To preserve a corpse using chemicals
audience	People listening to a speech, watching a movie
energetically	With energy
envelop	To enclose a letter, etc. in an envelope
envelope	A flat case paper case for keeping letters, etc.
epitaph	Words written on the tombstone in memory of a dead person

ewe	A female sheep
exhume	To dig out a buried corpse from the grave
fare	Money paid for travelling in a taxi/bus
fiance	A man that a woman is engaged to
fiancee	A woman that a man is engaged to
fishmonger	A person who sells fish
florist	A person who sells flowers
florist's	A place where flowers are sold
flower girl	A girl who carries flowers at a wedding ceremony
fortnight	A period of two weeks
fortnightly	Every two weeks
fruit	Mangoes, oranges, gooseberries
Ghanaian	A person or thing from Ghana
glazier	A person who repairs glasses
grocer	A person who sells tomatoes, onions, etc.
grocer's	A place where tomatoes, onions, etc.
hearse	A vehicle for transporting dead bodies
heifer	A young cow
helmet	A protective device worn by cyclists, etc. on their heads
hotelier	A person who owns a hotel
host	A group of angels
hurriedly	In a hurried way
Ghanaian	A person from Ghana
goatherd	A man who takes care of goats
goose	Meat of goose/gander

groomsman	A man who takes care of the groom/ bridegroom
insecure	Not secure
judge	A person who makes decisions in court
juvenile	A young person who has committed a crime
kit	A young rabbit
kitten	A young cat
lengthen	Make long
line - up	A list of TV or radio programmes
lunch	Noon meal of the day
mare	A female horse
mechanic	A person who repairs cars
metallic	Made of metal
milkmaid	A woman who sells milk
milkman	A man who sells milk
mortuary	A building or room where corpses are kept before burial
motion	Main topic of debate
mourners	People attending a funeral
mummy	A corpse that has been embalmed
mutton	Meat of a sheep/ram/ewe
occasion	A special event or function
ophthalmologist/ oculist	A doctor for eyes
optician	A person who repairs and sells eye glasses
opposers	People who argue against a motion
pack	A group of wolves
pageboy	A boy who walks with the bride at her wedding

passenger	A person travelling in a taxi/bus/aeroplane
pedestrian	A person who walks on the road
pediatrician	A doctor of children
penfriend/ pen pal	A distant friend with whom you communicate using letters
plumber	A person who repairs water pipes
prefer	Like more
pride	A group of lions
pork	Meat of pig
postage	Money you pay to send a letter
postpone	Put on a later date
proposers	People who support a motion
puppy	A young dog/bitch
quickly	In a quick way
ram	A male sheep
referee	A person officiating a football match
repairer/repairman	A man who repairs radios, TVs and watches
requiem mass	A mass for the dead
restaurateur	A person who owns a restaurant
saddle	A bicycle seat
seamstress	A woman who sews clothes
shepherd	A man who takes care of sheep/ewes/rams
shepherdess	A woman who takes care of sheep/ewes/rams
show	A performance esp. one in a theatre
shroud	A piece of cloth in which a corpse is wrapped
sibling	Your brother or sister

smooth	To make something smooth
spanner	A tool used for turning nuts
spectators	People watching a football/ netball match
spouse	One's husband or wife
squab	A young dove
stallion	A male horse
stationer	A person who sells pens, pencils and books
stationer's	A place where pens, pencils and books are sold
studio	A room where music, a TV or radio show is recorded and broadcast
supper	Main meal of the day
sweep	Clean with brooms
tailor	A man who sews clothes
theatre	A building where movies are watched
thrice	Three times
toolbox/toolkit	A box where the mechanic keeps his tools
triplets	Three children born of the same mother at ago
troupe	A group of dancers
turkey	Meat of turkey
umpire	A person officiating a netball match
undertaker/mortician	A funeral director
undisciplined	Not disciplined
veal	Meat of calf
venison	Meat of deer
veterinary surgeon	A doctor for animals
waiter	A man who serves meals in a restaurant/hotel

weak	Lacking strength
whenever	every time
withdraw	To get money from a bank/mobile account
withdrawal	The act of getting money from a bank/mobile account
wooden	Made of wood
woollen	Made of wool
wreath	Flowers put on a coffin

Activity I

Rewrite each of the following items giving a single word for the underlined group of words.

1. The meat of sheep is rarely sold by the butcher.
2. She made up her mind to leave for the city.
3. Her fat goat has just given birth to two young ones.
4. The people from China are very hardworking.
5. The audience did not understand the main topic of the debate.
6. Buganda is found in the centre of Uganda.
7. Where are these people who walk along the road going?
8. Give me my thing that I always wear in the head during sunny weather?
9. The people listening to the chief guest's speech complained that the chief was not loud enough.
10. Mr. Smith's home does not have enough cups, plates, saucepans and dishes.
11. Hon. Eria Kategaya breathed his last in a Kenyan hospital.
12. The names in the class register are arranged in alphabetical order.
13. I was born on the fifth day of the week.
14. He ran away because of being treated in a cruel way by his stepmother.
15. Our village council meets at regular intervals to discuss important issues.
16. That nurse is not kind to patients.
17. We all enjoyed our main meal of the day.
18. The man who defiled the girl did not accept the punishment.
19. Our grandfather sat with comfort in the armchair.
20. The cleanest man who sells meat in our village was arrested.

Activity II

1. You must take back that book to the library after reading it.
2. The referee told the players to start again the game.
3. Farmers do not plant crops during long period of dry weather.
4. The army fought the rebels with a lot of success.
5. I am not sure whether my father will attend the school concert.
6. She has not been here for a period of fourteen days.
7. The showroom was emptied and cleaned with brooms.
8. The person who receives money in that hotel is kind.
9. Hellen's health is getting better and better every day.
10. Kintu's cows produced two young ones yesterday.
11. Elizabeth is going to get married to a son to the king.
12. The man who collects fares from the passengers pushed him out of the taxi.
13. Children are not allowed to go to the place where food is cooked.
14. People are advised to eat a lot of mangoes, oranges and pineapples.
15. There were many sick people in the hospital.
16. The man whose wife died has refused to marry again.
17. Go on practising until I tell you to stop.
18. Mary could not remember what her mother had told her.
19. Keep away from people with corona virus.
20. She stayed in Tanzania for a period of seven days.

Activity III

1. The children whose parents are dead were given blankets at school.
2. You need water for your bulls and cows.
3. The head teacher bought chairs and desks for the school.
4. There were many people riding bicycles in town.
5. The government has built a school for the people who cannot hear.
6. Besides beef, I enjoy sheep's meat.
7. The stranger walked to the place where bread and cakes are made.
8. We shall visit the place where aeroplanes land.
9. She works as a person who serves customers at the hotel.
10. He was sent away from school for his misconduct.
11. Kenneth is my brother's son.
12. Every employee expects a good pay for the amount of work done.
13. They were punished for refusing to obey their parents.
14. Doreen joined secondary school because she did not fail PLE.
15. We went to a hotel which did not have a list of items served.

16. The boy who was imprisoned is not guilty.
17. The figure is shaped in form of a circle.
18. Catching fish is one of the activities in my home district.
19. Sarah solves problems with ease.
20. The class monitor has put up the list of responsibilities to be done and the class members to them.

Activity IV

1. Do all birds move in the air?
2. The thief was handled without mercy.
3. I have been attending school everyday.
4. Mother s and fathers need to be respected.
5. The teacher told us to face the direction where the sun rises.
6. He did not answer the questions in a correct way.
7. The teacher does not like children who steal.
8. The young girl did not accept the gift from the stranger.
9. Most birds make homes of grass in which to lay their eggs.
10. They ran to the kitchen at once.
11. The lazy girl was not successful in the final examination.
12. He made boxes that were shaped like a triangle.
13. We should be kind to the people who do not have anything.
14. She was asked to say again the question.
15. Michael went away without permission from school.
16. The ranger does not have to be cruel to the tourists.
17. My goat has produced two young ones.
18. The political unrest lasted for a period of two weeks.
19. He took his shoes to the man who repairs shoes.
20. That is the doctor who treats eyes.

Activity V

1. The young elephant died yesterday.
2. The pupils should write down all the corrected words.
3. Engineer Walusimbi is the man whose wife passed away.
4. The group of people watching the match between England and Croatia were very excited.
5. People who walk on foot should use the zebra crossing.
6. The guest of honour was entertained by the group of dancers.
7. My brother married a very nice looking lady.

8. Motorists should always drive their vehicles with a lot of care to avoid accidents.
9. The clothes the actors were putting on were made of cotton.
10. There are many rats in the store for grains.
11. The women removed the outer skins the bananas before they cooked them.
12. All the classrooms in our school have charts for showing dates and months of the year.
13. During the war, we used to eat our food in a hurry.
14. Nambi is always listening carefully in class.
15. Lake Victoria has many places of land surrounded by water.
16. Some of the girls in our class are not disciplined
17. The second scene of the play amused the people watching it.
18. Grandfather is lacking strength because he has been sick.
19. Petrol is not cheap nowadays.
20. Can you give me the list of food served at a restaurant?

Activity VI

1. Leah rears many hens and cocks.
2. The place where animals are slaughtered has been closed.
3. A female sheep charged at the young girl.
4. This school is for the visually impaired children.
5. A male horse is galloping down the street.
6. The stranger was in need of what to drink.
7. As soon as it started raining, the farmers sowed their seeds.
8. The money he put on his bank account was swindled by the manager.
9. They are writing an exam at the moment.
10. His handwriting has become better.
11. She did answer back my letter.
12. The meeting was put on a later date.
13. Many people turned up for the meeting.
14. The doctor could not find a way of healing the disease.
15. We met a group of thieves.
16. School children get holidays three times a year.
17. You should not abuse the rights of under eighteen years
18. Come to this place and I tell you.
19. Our teacher walks with energy.
20. My grandmother is lacking strength because she has been sick.

Activity VII

1. I like more writing letters to sending emails.
2. Some of the boys in our class are boys in our class are not disciplined.
3. All schools opened again for first term in February this year.
4. Gaga rears many hens and cocks
5. Cooking using dry heat in an oven interesting.
6. I sat next to you.
7. That girl is not hardworking.
8. Musiimenta always reads through and corrects the articles.
9. We without making noise went of the courtroom.
10. That machine for processing and storing information belongs to me.
11. The second scene of the play amused the people watching it.
12. They did not win the match.
13. People driving cars must be careful.
14. The person riding a motorcycle was blamed for not wearing a helmet.
15. The mechanic screwed the nuts in a way that is difficult to open or separate.
16. Turn off the music because it is making a lot of noise.
17. His corp corpse was wrapped in a winding sheet.
18. Linda apologises every time she makes a mistake.
19. The teacher told her to make long the line.
20. Emanuel, do you know the time Mrs. Kavuma will arrive?

VIII

1. My sister is kind and willing to help.
2. Will you be present at the meeting tomorrow?
3. I spent a quiet and calm day at the beach yesterday.
4. The elections ended without violence last year.
5. He was put in prison for ten years.
6. Hunting illegally wild animals has become a big problem in Uganda.
7. You should keep safe animals against harm.
8. The lorry was carrying tables, chairs and beds.
9. What are your plans for the time after now?
10. Some prisoners are punished severely.
11. The building for storing in grain has caught fire,

12. Why haven't you given food to the chickens yet?

13. I came across a stranger as I was going to school.

14. She said yes to my proposal.

15.

OPPOSITES

These are also known as antonyms.

Consider:

<u>Use prefix un</u>	
clean	unclean
clear	unclear
comfortable	uncomfortable
disciplined	undisciplined
employed	unemployed
fair	unfair
fairly	unfairly
faithful	unfaithful
familiar	unfamiliar
favourable	unfavorable
fortunate	unfortunate
godly	ungodly/satanic
grateful	ungrateful
happy	unhappy
holy	unholy

important	unimportant
impressive	unimpressive
intentionally	unintentionally
jumble	unjumble
just	unjust
kind	unkind
like	unlike
likely	unlikely
limited	unlimited
lucky	unlucky
popular	unpopular
precedented	unprecedented
principled	unprincipled
productive	unproductive
professional	unprofessional
pronounce	unpronounce
satisfactory	unsatisfactory
seen	unseen
stable	unstable
tidy	untidy
tie	untie
told	untold
reliable	unreliable
usual	unusual
wanted	unwanted

<p>wise</p> <p>willing</p> <p>wrap</p>	<p>unwise</p> <p>unwilling</p> <p>unwrapped</p>
<p><u>Use prefix mis</u></p> <p>appropriate</p> <p>behave</p> <p>calculate</p> <p>carriage</p> <p>conceive</p> <p>conduct</p> <p>direct</p> <p>fire</p> <p>fortune</p> <p>hear</p> <p>lead</p> <p>manage</p> <p>match</p> <p>placed</p> <p>print</p> <p>quote</p> <p>read</p> <p>represent</p> <p>report</p>	<p>misappropriate</p> <p>misbehave</p> <p>miscalculate</p> <p>miscarriage</p> <p>misconceive</p> <p>misconduct</p> <p>misdirect</p> <p>misfire</p> <p>misfortune</p> <p>mishear</p> <p>mislead</p> <p>mismanage</p> <p>mismatch</p> <p>misplaced</p> <p>misprint</p> <p>misquote</p> <p>misread</p> <p>misrepresent</p> <p>misreport</p>

taken	mistaken
treat	mistreat
trust	mistrust
understand	misunderstand
<u>Add prefix im</u>	
balance	imbalance
material	immaterial
mature	immature
memorial	immemorial
migrant	immigrant
mobile	immobile
moderate	immoderate
modest	immodest
moral	immoral
movable	immovable
passable	impassable
patient	impatient
pending	impending
perfect	imperfect
peril	imperil
personal	impersonal
polite	impolite

possible	impossible
proper	proper
purity	impurity
<u>Add prefix il</u>	
licit	Illicit
legal	illegal
legality	illegality
legible	illegible
legitimate	illegitimate
liberal	illiberal
literate	illiterate
<u>Add prefix in</u>	
ability	inability
accurate	inaccurate
adequate	inadequate
capable	incapable
competent	incompetent
correct	incorrect
decent	indecent
direct	indirect
efficient	inefficient
fertile	infertile

finite	infinite
formal	informal
<u>Add prefix dis</u>	
agree	disagree
allow	disallow
appear	disappear
approve	disapprove
arm	disarm
assemble	disassemble
comfort	discomfort
connect	disconnect
cover	discover
encourage	discourage
grace	disgrace
honest	dishonest
like	dislike
loyal	disloyal
order	disorder
organise	disorganise
own	disown
qualify	disqualify
regard	disregard
<u>Add prefix ir</u>	
rational	irrational

redeemable	irredeemable
refutable	irrefutable
regular	irregular
relevant	irrelevant
religious	irreligious
resistible	irresistible
reversible	irreversible
responsible	irresponsible
responsibly	irresponsibly
<u>Add suffix less</u>	
careful	careless
colourful	colourless
graceful	graceless
helpful	helpless
hopeful	hopeless
merciful	merciless
mindful	mindless
painful	painless
powerful	powerless
useful	useless
<u>Masculine and feminine opposites</u>	
actor	actress
bachelor	spinster
best man	maid of honour/ matron of honour

billy goat	nanny goat
bull	cow
bullock	heifer
boar	sow
buck	doe
bridesmaid	groomsman
conductor	conductress
dog	bitch
drake	duck
emperor	empress
governor	governess
groom	bride/ bridegroom
hare	doe
headmaster	headmistress
heir	heiress
hen	cock/rooster
hero	heroine
host	hostess
hunter	huntress
husband	wife
father	mother
fox	vixen
gentleman	lady
giant	giantess
gander	goose

grandfather	grandmother
king	queen
lad	lass
lion	lioness
man	woman
mayor	mayoress
nephew	niece
pageboy	flower girl
peacock	peahen
poet	poetess
prince	princess
ram	ewe
stallion	mare
tailor	seamstress
tiger	tigress
waiter	waitress
widower	widow
wizard	witch
<u>Opposites of selected verbs</u>	
admit	dismiss/discharge
arrive	arrival
begin	stop
bend	straiten
bury	exhume

bring	take
brought	took
come	go
cry	laugh
disapproval	approval
float	sink
start/ commence	stop
load	unload
loosen	tighten
lose	win
lost	won/found
spend	save
succeed	fail
withdraw/ withdrawal	deposit
<u>Opposites of selected adjectives</u>	
busy	idle
calm	smooth/ rough
dirty	clean
drunk/ drunken	sober
dull	wise
duller	wiser
easy	difficult
humble	proud
near	far

open	closed/ close
physical	mental
ripe	raw/uncooked/undercooked
shallow	deep
sharp	blunt
smart	shabby
smooth	rough
sweet	sour
quick	slow
<u>Miscellaneous</u>	
abundance	Scarcity
admission	dismissal/ discharge
ancient	modern
arrival	departure
ascend	descend
awake	asleep
carefully	carelessly
cheap	costly/ expensive
cheaper	more expensive
deep	shallow
former	latter
here	there
late	early
lowland	highland

minor	major/ adult
moving	stationary
optional	compulsory
passers - by	locals
sender	receiver/ recipient
selfish	selfless
smartly	shabbily
soil/dirty	clean/tidy
success	failure
sunset	sunrise
wide	narrow

Consider:

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items giving the opposite of the underlined word.

1. The suspect was found innocent.
2. Most girls put on tight clothes.
3. The house girl has intentionally broken the glass.
4. His dismissal from the university surprised his parents.
5. The early man used sharp weapons.
6. Are all the mangoes in your basket raw?
7. There are many people who are employed in rural areas.
8. The waiter gave me tasty buns at the restaurant.
9. Lake Kyoga became deep because of too much silt on its banks.
10. He bought the cheapest shirt from that shop.
11. She sold the cow cheaply.
12. The robber who was shot dead was armed.
13. Do doctors advise us to eat ripe fruits?
14. We had to meet at the exit of the dancehall.

15. The book which I received as a present from my uncle is useless.
16. Kipsiro's recent success in athletics was due to inadequate practice.
17. Martin's niece is sick.
18. Don't tell me about that crazy woman; I love her so much.
19. Responsible children disobey their parents.
20. My father rides his bicycle very fast.

Activity II

1. The teacher is sitting behind the classroom.
2. On hearing the news, he laughed.
3. Disciplined pupils are always punished.
4. The best man looked smart during the wedding.
5. The city is full of ancient buildings.
6. There were beggars at the exit of the church.
7. It rained to their disadvantage.
8. We could not ascend because of the slippery path.
9. It is easy to sail on Lake Kyoga when the water is smooth.
10. Benjamin lost the job due to his ability.
11. Our carpenter is a very handsome man.
12. He wanted to know the departure time of the Arusha train.
13. The silly boy could not forget where he had put his book.
14. Rosemary is a humble girl.
15. Have you learnt about writing informal letters?
16. My failure in the examinations surprised my uncle.
17. Your handwriting is legible.
18. Students had to find out the exterior of the given angle.
19. Many Ugandans live in urban areas.
20. The decrease in fuel prices has affected many travelers.

Activity III

1. Jimmy and James are absent today.
2. Rwanda is the largest country in East Africa.
3. Mona Lisa's story was complete.
4. Her end of term results were encouraging.
5. Sulaiman is a selfish man.
6. My nephew has just joined secondary school.
7. The motorist drove carefully.

8. Atugasha's suncle visited us recently.
9. The road to the border is very rough.
10. We reached the airport before the king's arrival.
11. The waiters have done a good job.
12. She forgot to write the sender's address.
13. This place is full of lowlands.
14. The athlete collapsed after reaching the finishing line.
15. The president left out the minor points in his speech.
16. That boy is the ugliest of the three.
17. The lion killed a hyena.
18. Aphura's skirt was very dirty yesterday.
19. Children come to school very late.
20. Most house girls are kind to babies.

Activity IV

1. The teacher was very annoyed with me.
2. The dog barked loudly last night.
3. We learnt about regular verbs last year.
4. She is carrying a heavy box.
5. Many people like walking.
6. I believed everything he said.
7. The manager was satisfied with the work done.
8. The interviewer treated her with respect.
9. The streets have been idle this week
10. The lake is shallow.
11. All the occupants of the boat were dead.
12. The motorists were sober.
13. The wood has a smooth surface.
14. The trousers were too tight in the waist.
15. She has hundreds of friends.
16. We watched the tin float for some time.
17. Sam sent the letter but remembered to stick a stamp on the envelope.
18. The ring was lost in the morning.
19. The river is narrow at its mouth.
20. She emptied her suitcase and locked it.

Activity V

- 1 They seldom visit their cousins.
- 2 Were you present at the arrival of the guests?
- 3 Mrs. Kengoro rears many ewes on her farm.
- 4 We proudly applied for the job.
- 5 The chef was shabbily dressed.
- 6 The door was closed.
- 7 There was much silence during the lesson.
- 8 He requested them to show their identity cards.
- 9 They are happily married.
- 10 She fired and failed the whole test.
- 11 Write is a regular verb.
- 12 This business has been managed.
- 13 That book has a lot of leading information.
- 14 It is optional for all rich Muslims to pay alms.
- 15 Is salt insoluble in water?
- 16 She is an infamous diver.
- 17 The pirates are merciful people.
- 18 Circumcision is a sign of impurity.
- 19 The stranger walked into the bank hall and filled a deposit form.
- 20 The wizard uses charms and amulets.
- 21 He always spends all the money he gets.
- 22 There are many passers - by in this town.

GOING TO

We use this structure to talk about the near future. It should be followed by *is, are* or *am*.

Consider:

- (a) I intend to work hard during this term.
I am going to work hard during this term.
- (b) She has no intention of attending remedial classes.
She is not going to attend remedial classes.
- (c) Mother will go to Lira tomorrow.
Mother is going to Lira tomorrow.
- (d) I believe that I will pass the test.
I am going to pass the test.
- (e) Angella will have to see a doctor.
Angella is going to see a doctor.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items using ...going to....

1. I must look smart on my birthday.
2. Manchester United will win the match.
3. You should board a taxi from school.
4. My sister will be happy if I visit her.
5. I plan to stay upcountry with my cousins.
6. It will rain hard this season.
7. We have no intention of travelling to the countryside.
8. Fahad may do his homework after supper.
9. We will write letters to our friends next week.
10. I don't intend to come to school this week.

BY THE TIME/BY THE END

In the future tense, this structure is followed by *will have* + a *participle verb form*, e.g. will have come, will have swept, will have seen, etc.

In the past, it is followed by *had* + a *participle verb form*, e.g. had come, had swept, had seen, etc.

NB: *By the time* may be placed at the beginning or used within the sentence.

Consider:

- (a) Her parents came back at eleven. She went to bed at ten.
By the time her parents came, she had gone to bed.
She had gone to bed by the time her parents arrived.
- (b) The doctor arrived at one. The patient died at midday.
By the time the doctor arrived, the patient had died.
The patient had died by the time the doctor arrived.
- (c) The chief guest will go away before the service ends.
By the time the service ends, the chief guest will have gone.
The chief guest will have gone by the time the service ends.
- (d) The gentleman entered the bank after switching off his phone.
 By the time the gentleman entered the bank, he had switched off his phone.
 The gentleman had switched off his phone by the time he entered the bank.
- (e) Primary Seven will do their PLE exams in November this year. (Begin: By December...)
By December this year, Primary Seven will have done their PLE exams.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. The thief ran away before the police came. (Begin: **By the time...**)
2. The pupils went for short calls and then started the examination. (Use ...**by the time...**)
3. After giving birth, Teddy was promoted to a senior level. (Begin: **By the time...**)
4. We shall do fifty numbers before the bell rings. (Use ...**by the time...**)
5. They will prepare for the president before he comes. (Begin: **By the time...**)
6. Amin Dada was overthrown after ruling Uganda for several years. (Use ...**by the time...**)
7. They will punish him after the morning session. (Begin: **By the end...**)
8. She will leave school after studying for twenty years. (Use ...**by the time...**)
9. 1910, motorcars were quite common. (End...**by 1910...**)
10. The killer escaped before she called the police. (Begin: **By the time...**)
11. We ate lunch at midday. (Begin: By 2 o'clock ...)
12. We shall do our end of term exams before the end of this month. (Begin: By the)
13. I shall tidy your table at 10 o'clock. You will arrive at 11 o'clock. (Use ...**by the time...**)
14. The music and drama concert will end at 5: 00 o'clock. (Begin: By 6: 00 o'clock ...)
- 15.

Activity II

1. Next August, you will be here for two years. (Begin: **By next...**)
2. Next week, I will hear whether I passed or failed. (End ...**by next week.**)
3. Shakespeare died. He wrote over thirty plays. (Join beginning: **By the time...**)
4. She will leave school. She has studied French for nine years. (Use ...**by the time...**)
5. Tomorrow. The swelling will disappear. (End ...**by tomorrow.**)
6. They will receive their results in June. (Begin: **By July...**)
7. The chief guest will go away before the service ends. (Begin: **By the time...**)
8. They will get married before the end of this term. (Begin: **By the end...**)
9. The boy ate six rotten mangoes before his mother stopped him. (Begin: **By the time...**)
10. They gathered rubbish before they had lunch. (Begin: **By the time...**)
11. We had our lunch before we came. (Begin: **By the time ...**)
- 12.

AND SO

This structure is used to join two positive sentences. It means *as well as*.

NB: You must keep the tense of the original sentences.

Consider:

- (a) Switching on a radio was easy. Switching on a television was easy.
- (b) Hens lay eggs. Ducks lay eggs.
- (c) My brother likes watching cartoons. I like watching cartoons.
- (d) A CD is useful. A DVD is useful.
- (e) Talk shows are interesting. Football is interesting.

Activity I

Join each of the following pairs of sentences using....and so.....

1. IrynNamubiru is a good singer. IrynNtale is a good singer.
2. Kabuhembe is hot. Maboona is hot.
3. Muriisa was a teacher. Muhiima was a teacher.
4. They have some money. She has some money.
5. She is digging now. I am digging now.
6. Sandra likes music. Sufra likes music.
7. I was sitting on a bench. My friend Jane was sitting on a bench.
8. Sawyer saw it. Samantha saw it.
9. Both a cow and a buffalo have horns.
10. A bird can fly. An aeroplane can fly.
11. Nancy, as well as Leticia, did not go to the market.
12. Denis and his brother were in the meeting.
13. Both Aamal and Maryam passed the interview.
14. Cathy, as well as Vanessa, has woven a beautiful basket.
15. A bird can fly. An aeroplane can fly.

Activity II

Rewrite each of the following as two separate sentences

1. They eat rice and so do we.
2. Ivan is smart and so is Yvonne.
3. Paul has a radio and so has Pauline.
4. Nathan was an MP and so was Gregory.
5. I went to the internet cafe and so did Sandra.
6. A CD should be kept well and so should a DVD.
7. Issa wants to become a pilot and so does Ayesha.
8. Joshua went on a tour and so did Emmanuel.
9. She cooked food and so did I.
10. Joan goes to the airport fortnightly and so does John.

...AND NEITHER...

This is used to join two negative sentences.

Consider:

- (a) Maths is not hard. English is not hard.
- (b) Mukasa does not play well. Mugisha does not play well.
- (c) Alex did not greet us. Linda didn't greet us.
- (d) Mother cannot read. Father cannot read.
- (e) Deborah did not enjoy the show. Gertrude did not enjoy the show.

Activity

Join each of the following pairs of sentences using ...and neither...

1. Kyamadidi did not win. Otafiire did not win.
2. I don't have a pen. My friend doesn't have a pen.
3. Sylvia won't come. Sawyer won't come.
4. The host did not take lunch. The guest did not take lunch.
5. Hajjara does not have a DVD player. Jumba does not have a DVD player.
6. I can't believe it. My uncle can't believe it.
7. Goats do not lay eggs. Rabbits do not lay eggs.
8. I didn't meet Barbara. I didn't meet her husband.

Rewrite each of the following items as two separate sentences.

9. You have not had lunch and neither have I.
10. Martin should not go and neither should Angela.
11. James is not a girl and neither is Juma.
12. Mother did not withdraw the money. Father did not withdraw the money.
13. Moses cannot cheat. I cannot cheat.
14. Henry doesn't make benches and neither does he make chairs.
15. She won't do such a thing. He won't do such a thing.

16. Boaz did not bathe in the morning. Bosco did not bathe in the morning.
17. She cannot read. She cannot write.
18. Opio doesn't plane his planks. He doesn't cut wood using a saw.
- 19.

...TOO...TO...

The structure too...to has an idea of not. It is used to express a negative.

NB: When one subject is given, we use *subject + too + adjective + to + verb...*

When we have two subjects, we use *subject + too + adjective + for + second subject + verb...*

Avoid using the pronoun *it*.

Consider:

- (a) Jennifer is very lazy. She cannot lift the box.
Jennifer is too lazy to lift the box.
- (b) Shafiq is very young. He cannot get married.
Shafiq is too young to get married.
- (c) The tea is very hot. The baby cannot drink it.
The tea is too hot for the baby to drink.

Activity

Join each of the following sentences as instructed in the brackets.

1. The water is very dirty. We cannot use it.
2. The porridge is very hot. Naume cannot eat it.
3. Your jeans are very tight. They cannot fit him.
4. Magezi is very clever. He cannot fail this examination.
5. She is quite short. She cannot touch the ceiling.
6. Chess is very difficult. A child cannot learn it.
7. The coat was too big for Amos to wear. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
8. Kamoga's luggage is very heavy. He cannot lift it. (Use ...too ...to ...)
9. She cannot wear these shoes because they are very tight.

...ENOUGH...TO...

Enough is used to mean *as much as*. It also means *sufficient*.

NB: We introduce the word for if we have two subjects.

Consider:

- (a) Shakira is old. Shakira can go to school alone.
Shakira is old enough to go to school alone.
- (b) Kirabo is tall. She can touch the ceiling.

- Kirabo is tall enough to touch the ceiling.
- (c) This examination is very simple. He will pass it.
This examination is simple enough for her to pass.
- (d) It was very warm. We could go out without our coats.
It was warm enough for us to go out without our coats.
- (e) Is this mango tasty? Can one eat it?

Activity I

Join each of the following sentences using ...enough...to

1. Topisita is very bright. She can pass this test.
2. They had plenty of time. They could help their friends.
3. Arsenal had a lot of practice. They defeated all the other teams.
4. She looks smart. She can join the party.
5. Dorcus was very fast. She could complete the marathon in an hour.
6. This DVD is very good. It can play all the music we want.
7. That dog is very fierce. It can bark at every stranger.
8. The rice is very delicious. They can eat more than one plate.
9. There is plenty of food. Everyone will be served.
10. The movie was very interesting. Everybody enjoyed it.
11. You have little airtime. It cannot make a call.

Activity II

1. There is a lot of water. It will last for years.
2. She didn't run fast. She didn't catch the bus.
3. Is it good? Can one eat it?
4. We have a lot of money. We can build a house.
5. Are there many pupils? Can they form a football team?
6. Sarah is stupid. She will believe anything.
7. The conversation was loud. One could hear it.
8. Her English was clear. We could understand it.
9. Is this bicycle good? Can I ride it?
10. The clay is not soft. The Potter cannot use it.

EITHER ... OR

This conjunction is used to join positive sentences. It shows a choice of two things.

NB: Use *either...or* in the middle of the sentence if there is one subject. Use it at the beginning if there are two subjects.

When either ... or is used with two singular nouns, the verb can be singular or plural. A singular verb is more formal.

Consider

- (a) You must provide food to your children. You must risk going to prison.
You must either provide food to your children or risk going to prison.
- (b) Nyangoma will do the dishes. Nyakato will do the dishes.
Either Nyangoma or Nyakato will do the dishes.
- (c) I shall vote Museveni for president. I shall vote Bobi Wine for president.
I shall vote either Museveni or Bobi Wine for president.
- (d) The girls are shouting. The boys are shouting.
Either the girls or the boys are shouting.
- (e) Timothy is a kind doctor. Timothy is a hardworking man.
Timothy is either a kind doctor or a hardworking man.

Activity

Join each of the following pairs of items usingeither....or....

1. Jessy will pay the fine. Jessy will go to prison.
2. She may stay in school. She may get married.
3. Mother will fly to England. Father will fly to England.
4. Amina has given birth to a baby boy. Amina has given birth to a baby girl.
5. They may eat beef today. They may eat chicken today.
6. You should shout when a stranger attacks you. You should scream when a stranger attacks you.
7. She will write a letter. She will send an email.
8. They had to continue with the journey. They had to stop over for the night.
9. Jackson may go to the church. Jackson may go to the club.
10. Amoti is a comedian. Kachaina is a comedian.
11. She is Czech. She is Slovak.
12. I am going to buy a camera with the money. I am going to buy a DVD player with the money.
13. Hanifah is suffering from flu. Hanifah is suffering from cold.

NEITHER ...NOR

This structure is used to show that a negative statement is true of two things.

NB: If *neither...nor* is used to join positive sentences, use the opposite of the given adjectives.

When *neither ... nor* is used with two singular nouns, the verb can be singular or plural. A singular verb is more formal.

Consider:

- (a) Tom does not have a book. Tim does not have a book.
Neither Tom nor Tim has a book.
- (b) The girl wasn't in class. The girl wasn't in the dormitory.

The girl was neither in class nor in the dormitory.

(c) She is tall. He is tall.

Neither she nor he is short.

(d) I never knew what happened to him. I never cared what happened to him.

I neither knew nor cared what happened to him.

(e) Their house is not big. Their house is not small.

Their house is neither big nor small.

(f) The girls are not happy. The boy is not happy.

Neither the girls nor the boy are happy.

Activity

*Join using each of the following items using **neither...nor***

1. My mother does not smoke. My father does not smoke.
2. The patient cannot sit. The patient cannot eat anything.
3. Snails are not fast. Tortoises are not fast.
4. The prime minister arrived early. The guest of honour arrived early.
5. The chef could not listen. The waiter could not listen.
6. A cow is a useful animal. A donkey is a useful animal.
7. Sendi does not like camping. Wendy does not like camping.
8. The flower girl was not happy. The pageboy was not happy.
9. The headmaster will not go to Kampala. The headmistress will not go to Kampala.
10. The goats were not fed. The cow was not fed.
11. Musa is not a Christian. Nusurat is not a Christian.
12. The TV doesn't actually work. The radio doesn't actually work.
13. Mother doesn't know how to read. Mother doesn't know how to write.
14. He was not guilty of theft. He was not guilty of arson.
15. He is not stupid. They are not stupid.
16. I didn't meet Barbara. I didn't meet her husband.
17. She could not go to Kenya by air. She could not go to Kenya by water.

OUGHT TO/SHOULD/MUST/HAS TO/HAD BETTER

This structure means should or had better.

NB: The negative form is ought not to.

Consider:

- (a) All children had better go to school.

- All children should go to school.*
All children ought to go to school.
All children must go to school.
- (b) Criminals should be arrested.
Criminals had better be arrested.
Criminals ought to be arrested.
Criminals must be arrested.
- (c) A witness must tell the truth.
A witness had better tell the truth
A witness ought to tell the truth.
A witness should tell the truth.
- (d) You must wash your hands after visiting the toilet.
You should wash your hands after visiting the toilet.
You had better wash your hands after visiting the toilet.
You ought to wash your hands after visiting the toilet.
- (e) Girls must kneel down when greeting elders.
Girls had better kneel down when greeting elders.
Girls should kneel down when greeting elders.
Girls ought to kneel down when greeting elders.

Activity I

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Children's rights should be respected. (Use ...**ought**...)
2. We ought to do our homework in time. (Use ...**had better**...)
3. Parents need to protect their children. (Use...**should**...)
4. You should consult a doctor. (Use...**ought**...)
5. All people must be aware of their rights to avoid being mistreated. (Use...**had better**...)
6. You ought not to drink and drive. (Use...**had better**...)
7. One should be careful about COVID-19 transmission. (Use...**must**...)
8. Girls must avoid sugar daddies. (Use...**ought**...)
9. People should not drive cars in dangerous mechanical conditions.
 (Use...**must**...)
10. I must stop for petrol. (Use...**should**...)
11. They must hurry. (Use...**had better**...)
12. John should listen to his parents. (Use...**must**...)
13. Girls and boys should avoid early marriage. (Use...**ought**...)
14. Muslims must say their prayers daily. (Use...**had better**...)
15. You must tell your parents about the man who keeps disturbing you on the way.
 (Use...**should**...)

Activity II

1. I must apologise to my friend. (Use...**ought**...)
2. I have to pass this test highly. (Use...**had better**...)
3. You ought to behave well towards your classmates. (Use...**must**...)
4. She must knock before entering. (Use...**ought**...)
5. Hairat had better work hard to pass her test. (Use...**should**...)
6. All children should go to school. (Use...**have to**...)
7. People must dress smartly. (Use...**had better**...)
8. Boys have to obey the school rules and regulations. (Use...**ought**...)
9. You must keep the environment clean. (Use...**should**...)
10. The rapist has to be imprisoned. (Use...**must**...)
11. Eric should file all his past papers. (Use...**ought**...)
12. Our head teacher is likely to travel to Kasese this week. (Use ...may ...)
- 13.

IN ORDER TO/SO AS

These are an expressions of reason just like because/so that/so as to, etc.

NB: The negative form is in order not to/ so as not to. When used at the beginning, in order to expects a comma.

Consider

- (a) You should move in a group. You want to avoid child abuse.
You should move in a group in order to avoid child abuse.
In order to avoid child abuse, you should move in a group.
You should move in a group so as to avoid child abuse.
- (b) We went to the internet cafe. We wanted to learn about computers.
We went to the cafe in order to learn about computers.
In order to learn about computers, we went to the internet café.
We went to the internet café so as to learn about computers.
- (c) Anne practiced English. She wanted to become perfect.
Anne practiced English in order to become perfect.
In order to become perfect, Anne practised English.
Anne practised English so as to become perfect.
- (d) He borrowed a spanner. He wanted to loosen bolts and nuts.
Henry borrowed a spanner in order to loosen bolts and nuts.
In order to loosen bolts and nuts, Henry borrowed a spanner.

Activity

Join each of the following pairs usingin order to....

1. She wants to go to college. She wants to become a teacher.

2. She repented to God. She wanted to be forgiven.
3. They called her Gumisiriza. They wanted to remember how long they had waited for her.
4. Mubiru saves money. He wants to send his children to school
5. He went to the salon. He wanted to have his hair cut.
6. A modern country must have an efficient police force. They want to keep law and order.
7. Some people have joined politics. They want to be house hold names. (Use ...in order ...)
8. Electricians use testers. They want to check the battery.
9. The carpenter returned home. He wanted to Polish his furniture.
10. Zechariah climbed the tree. He wanted to see Jesus.
11. MrsZaake left the salon at five o'clock. She wanted to find her husband outside the office.(Use ... so as ...)
12. I bought a toolbox. I wanted to keep my tools safely
13. Helen used a spanner. She wanted to tighten the nuts.
14. Farmers burn areas of bush. They want to prepare the ground for digging.
15. She wants to go to the club. She wants to shake her body.
16. Nankiga has borrowed a dictionary from the library. She wants to look up some hard words. (Use ... so as ...)
17. A good teacher explains. He wants to make the pupils understand the lesson.
18. The driver uses the wipers. He wants to clean the windscreen.
19. Mothee woke up very early because she wanted to prepare breakfast. (Begin: In order ...)
20. We woke up very early. We wanted to get time for homework.
21. Children ought to know about their rights. They should ensure that they are not mistreated. (Begin: In order not ...)
22. The government has banned child labour. They want to protect the young generation. (Use ...so as ...)
23. The trader displayed his goods. He wanted to attract customers. (Use ...in order...)
24. Moses bought some oil. He wanted to lubricate the engine.(Begin: In order ...)
25. Sue wanted to buy a litre of milk. She went to Karibu Dairy. (Use ...so as ...)
26. My father borrowed a spanner. He wanted to replace the worn tyre. (Begin: In order ...)
27. Most people visit the museum. They want to see things of long ago. (Use ... so as ...)
28. The farmer dug trenches around the garden. He wanted to control the rats. (Begin: In order ...)
29. She wants to go to the nightclub. She wants to shake her body. (Use ...so as ...)
30. Mercy went to the clinic. She wanted to buy some vitamin c tablets.
31. The motorist switched on the headlights. He wanted to see what was ahead of him.

...MORE INTERESTED...

This structure is used to mean that one likes something or someone more than the other.

NB: It is usually followed by *than*.

Consider:

- (a) Girls prefer cooking to playing.
Girls are more interested in cooking than playing.

- (b) I like dancing more than singing.
I am more interested in dancing than singing.
- (c) She likes slashing more than digging.
She is more interested in slashing than digging.

Activity

Rewrite usingmore interested...

1. She prefers watching cartoons to watching music.
2. I like reading novels more than sunbathing.
3. Father likes eating traditional dishes more than trendy ones.
4. Silas prefers carpentry to keeping animals.
5. The police likes arresting criminals more than setting them free.
- 6.
7. We prefer being kind to children to mistreating them.
8. Shakira liked discovering more than being told everything.
9. They like going to school more than going to the club.
10. He prefers working to begging.
11. Duncan likes telling the truth more than telling lies.
12. Do Bahima like herding more than crop growing?
13. Most pupils prefer playing to Studying.
14. Do they like reading more than writing?
15. I like watching movies more than playing chess.
16. They liked singing more than dancing.
17. She likes drawing cartoons more than writing compositions.

EXCLAMATION

To exclaim is to cry out suddenly because of shock, surprise, excitement, anger, etc.

NB: Exclamatory sentences may begin with: *What* or *How*, and end with an exclamation mark.
Avoid using the word *very* in such sentences.

Formulae:

What + article + adjective + verb

How + adjective + article + noun/pronoun + verb

Consider:

- (a) It has been a very beautiful day.
What a beautiful day it has been!

- How beautiful a day it has been!*
- (b) She is a wonderful netballer.
What a wonderful netballer she is!
How wonderful a netballer she is!
- (c) It is a very interesting movie.
What an interesting movie it is!
How interesting a movie it is!
- (d) Irene is a very tall girl.
What a tall girl Irene is!
How tall a girl Irene is!
- (e) AIDS is a very deadly disease.
What a deadly disease AIDS is!
How deadly a disease AIDS is!

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Didi's World was a wonderful place. (Begin: **What...**)
2. What an amazing choir this is! (Use ... very ...)
3. Cancer is a very dangerous disease. Begin: **How...**)
4. What a professional photographer Conrad was! (Begin: Conrad was ...)
5. Princess Diana was very kind. (End...!)
6. How busy a road this is! (Begin: This is ...)
7. That road is very busy. (Begin: **What...**)
8. How voluminous a book a dictionary is! (Begin: A dictionary is ...)
9. Jim is very talkative. (Begin: **How...**)
10. It was clever of him to build the house in the village. (Begin: **How...**)
11. Coca cola is a tasty drink. (Begin: **What...**)
12. The fox is a very cunning animal. (Begin: **How...**)
13. Sheila is very careful. (Begin: **What...**)
14. It was a very long story. (End...!)
15. That has been a very wonderful cartoon. (Begin: **What...**)
16. What an industrious person my father has been! (End ... person.)
17. MrMukasa is a very good plumber. (End ...!)
18. How bright an idea that was! (Use ... very ...)
19. Agatha is a very skilful seamstress. (Begin: What ...)
20. What a nice dress shehas sewn! (Begin: You)
21. She looked very beautiful in her wedding gown. (Begin: How ...!)

QUESTION TAGS

These are actually not questions although they end with question marks.

Question tags are formed using helping verbs and pronouns.

A question tag aims at a yes or no short response.

NB: The general rule: Positive statement = Negative tag and vice versa.

Consider:

- (a) John isn't a girl, is he?
- (b) Suzan was a teacher, wasn't she?
- (c) We like reading storybooks, don't we?
- (d) They will not look it up in a dictionary, will they?
- (e) The cat drank all the milk, didn't it?
- (f) Barbara has a camera, hasn't she? ..., doesn't she?
- (g) There is some tea in the teapot, isn't there?
- (h) They weren't just two men, were they?

Exceptions

- (i) Let's go for break, shall we?
- (j) Let's go to Kampala, shall we?
- (k) Let us go to Kampala, shall we?
Let us go to Kampala, will you?
Please, let us go to Kampala, won't you?
- (l) You need a house, don't you?
- (m) She needs a husband, doesn't she?
- (n) You needn't a house, need you?
- (o) She needn't go, need she?
- (p) Go away, will you?
- (q) Come in, will you?
- (r) Please, come in, won't you?

Activity I

Rewrite each of the following items and supply a question tag.

1. India is a big country.
2. An aeroplane can fly, _____?

3. You should take balanced diet.
4. Let's take lunch.
5. My aunt doesn't deal in second hand clothes, does she? (Begin: My aunt deals ...)
6. They needn't hunt wild animals.
7. We enjoyed the party.
8. It will happen again.
9. Please, get me a glass of water, ...? (End ...?)
10. I am a good watchman, aren't I? (Begin: I am not)
11. Children go to school every day.
12. Henry likes travelling.
13. Stand up straight, O'Mara, (Supply a suitable question tag to complete the sentence)
14. It is not far from the road to the shopping centre, is it? (End ... isn't it?)
15. I need a break. (Rewrite and supply a question tag)
16. Take me to England, please. (Rewrite and supply a suitable question tag)
17. My father withdrew some money from the bank, didn't he? (End ... did he?)
18. You didn't lend him your bicycle, did you? (End ... didn't you?)
19. We shall enjoy ourselves, shan't we? (End, **shall we?**)
20. He won't stop at the zebra crossing, will he? (End ... **won't he?**)
21. She did the work accurately. (End ... did she?)
22. James did not go to Nairobi, did he? (End ... **didn't he?**)
23. You are not coming, are you? (End ... **aren't you?**)
24. I am tall. (End?)
25. She found the meaning of the new word. (End ... did she?)
26. The shopkeeper sold some sugar, didn't she? (End... **did she?**)
27. I shall see you tomorrow, shan't I? (End... **shall I?**)
28. It won't rain today, will it? (End... **won't it?**)
29. There are few hills in Karamoja. (Rewrite and supply a suitable tag)
30. She doesn't like posho, does she? (End... **doesn't she?**)
31. The musicians sang so well at the party, didn't they? (End... did they?)
32. Sarah doesn't have much juice, does she? (Use... a lot...)
33. We have already answered all your questions. (End ... have we?)
34. The shopkeeper sold some sugar, didn't he? (End.... did he?)
35. We are now in Primary Seven, ____? (Rewrite and supply a suitable tag)
36. It is a long way from here to school, isn't it? (End is it?)
37. Joyce has arranged the words in alphabetical order. (End ... isn't it?)
38. You may pay all the money here, mayn't you? (End ... may you?)
39. Write the meanings of foreign words.
40. Let's look up the word 'bevy' in a dictionary,? (End ...?)

...HARDLY ...ANY/ALMOST NO/ALMOST NONE

Hardly means *almost not* or *almost none*. Use *any* after *hardly* in sentences that have phrases such as *no*, *none*, *little*, and so on.

NB: You may choose to use *rarely*, *barely* or *scarcely* instead of *hardly*.

Consider:

- (a) There is almost no truth in what she has written in this letter.
There is hardly any truth in what she has written in this letter.
- (b) I rarely visit my uncle.
I hardly visit my uncle.
- (c) There isn't much water in the tank.
There is hardly any water in the tank.
- (d) The small girl finds it hard to post the letter.
The small girl can hardly post the letter.
- (e) It is difficult for some pupils to punctuate their work.
Some pupils can hardly punctuate their work.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

- 1. It is hard for the Arabs to understand our language. (Use ...**hardly**...)
- 2. It was difficult for us to hear what she said. (Use ...**barely**...)
- 3. Angela finds it hard to speak Latin. (Use**hardly**...)
- 4. I never buy sweets for children. (Use ...**barely**...)
- 5. There was no music at the party. (Use ...**scarcely**...)
- 6. There was no hope of receiving gifts. (Use ...**hardly**....)
- 7. There was very little sugar in the bowl.
- 8. You barely attend concerts. (Use**hardly**....)
- 9. Stella cannot remember her date of birth. (Use**barely**...)
- 10. There is almost no money left to organise the bash. (Use ...**hardly**....)
- 11. The baby cannot walk. (Use ...**hardly**...)
- 12. There is almost no water left in the tank. (Use...**barely**...)
- 13. There was almost no one at the post office. (Use...**hardly**...)
- 14. There is barely any rain in the dry season (Use...**scarcely**...)
- 15. There is almost no tea left in the kettle. (Use...**hardly**...)
- 16. I didn't write any reply letter. (Use ... barely ...)
- 17. There was no one in the market. (Use ... hardly ...)
- 18. There is very little time left for us to write our final examinations. (Use ... hardly ... any ...)

LOOK FORWARD TO/LOOKING FORWARD TO

This means to be eager or to wait with pleasure for something to happen. The main verb normally ends in *-ing*.

Consider:

- (a) We hope to sit our final exams this year.
We look forward to sitting our final exams this year.
We are looking forward to sitting our final exams this year.
- (b) Sufra will get her gift next week.
Sufra looks forward to getting her gift next week.
Sufra is looking forward to getting her gift next week.
- (c) Mary and Paul hope to get married this week.
Mary and Paul look forward to getting married this week.
Mary and Paul are looking forward to getting married this week.
- (d) Martha is going to fly to Dubai this month.
Martha looks forward to flying to Dubai this month.
Martha is looking forward to flying to Dubai this month.
- (e) All farmers expect to harvest big yields this season.
All farmers look forward to harvesting big yields this season.
All farmers are looking forward to harvesting big yields this season.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items using ...look forward...

1. I hope to meet my uncle today.
2. I am eager to learn the Arabic language.
3. Our friends will visit us during this holiday.
4. She will see the doctor tomorrow.
5. We are eagerly waiting to get a change of meals.
6. Sarah hopes to pass the medical test.
7. The boys are going to swim on Saturday.
8. They expect to sit their final exams in November.
9. Matovu is getting set to take the princess.
10. The bride and groom expect a happy and blissful life.
11. She wants to know the other side of him.
12. They eagerly want to read all the available literature on keeping rabbits.

13. We hope to present our skit on stage.
14. The pilgrims are eager to walk up to Namugongo Shrine.
15. Ugandans eagerly want to vote in a president of their choice.
16. We expect many guests at the hotel this weekend.
17. They are very eager to visit the game park next week.

Rewrite each of the following usinglooking forward...

18. Mother will fly to England.
19. Emily is going to stay with us at the party.
20. The candidates are eagerly waiting to go on a trip.
21. They hope to eat rice at the picnic.
22. Manchester United are ready to win a treble this season
23. Frank is eagerly waiting to break up for holidays next week.
24. The school choir hopes to take the trophy home.
25. He is excited that he is touring the Uganda Wildlife Education Centre.
26. Sulaina hopes to be promoted.
27. We expect to join secondary school next year.
28. They hope to get a new examination centre.
29. We shall watch our house perform on stage.
30. Annette hopes to get high scores in exams.
31. Our teacher will mark the UNEB exams.
32. My father will buy a new house.

NONE OF/ A SINGLE/ALL THE

None means *not any*. It is normally followed by *of*. *None of* is followed by a singular verb. In positive sentences, use the opposite of the given verb.

Consider:

- (a) All these pens do not work.
None of these pens works.
Not a single of these pens works.
- (b) All our sons did not live nearby.
None of our sons lived nearby.
Not a single of our sons lived nearby.
- (c) All the trains were not going to Arua.
None of the trains was going to Arua.
Not a single of the trains was going to Arua.
- (d) All the pupils in this class are clever.
None of the pupils in this class is foolish.

Not a single of the pupils in this class is foolish.

(e) None of us has had a meal since yesterday.

All of us have not had a meal since yesterday.

Not a single of us has had a meal since yesterday.

Activity

Rewrite each of the items as instructed in the brackets.

1. All of us cannot sing the East African anthem. (Begin: **None...**)
2. All the boys did not have textbooks. (Begin: **None...**)
3. None of Tracy's sisters likes her. (Begin: **All...**)
4. All the girls are beautiful. (Begin: **None...**)
5. None of the women in this village is proud. (Begin: **All...**)
6. All the women in this building do not own property. (Begin: **None...**)
7. All the teachers did not come to school yesterday. (Begin: **None...**)
8. None of her uncles has been to college. (Begin: **All...**)
9. None of the hosts talked to us. (Begin: **Not a single...**)
10. None of our shamba boys is lazy. (Begin: **All...**)
11. All the candidates were present. (Begin: **Not a single...**)
- 12.

WOULD RATHER

Would rather is usually followed by than.

Consider:

(a) Julian likes singing. She likes dancing as much.

Julian would rather dance than sing.

(b) I am more interested in baking than digging.

I would rather bake than dig.

(c) He likes fish. He likes meat more.

He would rather eat meat than fish.

1. We enjoy eating cakes more than buns.
2. Boys like playing. They don't like cooking.
3. Anita loves jogging more than running.
4. Most children prefer taking rice to taking posho.
5. The girls enjoy swimming more than bathing.
6. I am more interested in digging than fetching water.
7. Opio will stay at home instead of going to the cinema.
8. She enjoys staying with her uncle than staying with her aunt.

NOT ONLY ... BUT ALSO

This structure is used to emphasise that something else is also true.

Not only can be used at the beginning or within a sentence. When used at the beginning, it is followed by a helping verb (is, was, did, does, should, etc.). When used within a sentence, not only comes after a helping verb.

NB: You use a comma while connecting clauses that are complete sentences.

A comma is not needed while connecting nouns.

If you add a comma on the result clause, the pronoun has to be repeated.

Consider:

(a) Milk is both tasty and nutritious.

Milk is not only tasty, but it is also nutritious.

Not only is milk tasty, but it is also nutritious.

(b) She needs food. She needs shelter.

She needs not only food but also shelter.

Not only does she need food but also shelter.

(c) Mary comes from a rich family. She is also brilliant.

Mary not only comes from a rich family, but she is also brilliant.

Not only does Mary come from a rich family, but she is also brilliant.

(d) Kimoso grazes animals on cold days. He grazes animals on hot days.

Kimoso grazes animals not only on cold days but also on hot days.

Not only does Kimoso graze animals on cold days but also on hot days.

Activity

1. He talked to the cashier. He talked to the receptionist. (Use ...not only ...)
2. The mechanic will wind my watch. He will repair my television set. (Usenot only...)
3. Children should not only wash utensils, but they should also fetch water. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
4. Besides repairing cars, Fred makes furniture. (Begin: Not only)
5. The papyrus was very dry. The papyrus was very dirty. (Use not only)
6. Animals must be given food. They must be given shelter. (Begin: Not only)
7. Ramsey read the menu. He ordered for a mouth-watering meal. (Usenot only ...)
8. Juma was a barber. He was a cobbler. (Begin: Not only ...)
9. She has visited the zoo. She has visited the museum. (Usenot ...)
10. She wrote the text. She selected the illustrations. (Begin: She not only)
11. There are problems with the children. There are problems with their parents. (Use ...not only ...).
12. Chelengati's employer was both rich and generous. (Begin: Chelengati's employer was not only)
13. Luminsa brought Chelengati to the city and found her a job. (Use ...not only)
14. Not only can Martin make people laugh but also cry. (Rewrite as two sentences)
15. Arinda writes plays for television. He acts in movies. (Use . ..not only)
16. I sent her many letters. I also tried to call her. (Begin: Not only)
17. Zuena was upset. She was disappointed. (Begin: Zuena was not only upset ...)
18. In winter, the days are short. They are also cold and dark. (Use ... not only ...)
19. Alice can dance. She can sing. (Use ... not only)
20. They visited their cousins in January. They again visited their cousins in September. (Use ...not only)
21. The phone can send messages. The phone can make calls. (Begin: Not only ... but also ...)
22. She respects her teachers. She respects her parents. (Use ... not only ... but also ...)
23. We woke up early on school days. We woke up early on weekends. (Begin: Not only ...)

24. She plays the piano. She plays the guitar. (Use ... not only ... but also ...)
25. He is highly educated. He is a talented teacher too. (Begin: Not only ... but also ...)
26. They go to Mombasa in August. They go there in December too. (Use ... not only ... but also ...)
27. The choir sang beautifully. Their movements were harmonised. (Begin: Not only ... but also ...)
28. The teacher taught us alphabetical order. The teacher taught us sounds. (Use ... not only ... but also ...)
29. He sent him an aerogram. He sent him an SMS. (Use ... not only ... but also ...)
30. Sharing a house with animals can lead to diseases. It can lead to other domestic problems. (Begin: Not only ... but also ...)
31. Kobugabe must shear the sheep. She must thatch the pen. (Use ... not only ... but also ...)

WHETHER... OR

Consider:

(a) I won't assist them.

I won't assist them whether they like it or not.

Whether they like it or not, I won't assist them.

(b) Even if she apologises, I won't forgive her.

I won't forgive her whether she apologises or not.

Whether she apologises or not, I won't forgive her.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1.

SO THAT/SUCH THAT

In the present tense, *so that* uses *can/will*. In the past tense, it uses *could/would*.

Consider:

- (a) I want to go to the club. I want to shake my body.
I want to go to the club so that I can shake my body.
- (b) I stood in the middle of the road. I wanted the driver to see me.
I stood in the middle of the road so that the driver would see me.
- (c) I studied Latin. I wanted to read Dante in the original.
I studied Latin so that I would read Dante in the original.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. She wanted to get fresh air. She opened the windows. (Useso that ...)
2. Nagoya must wear sunglasses in order to avoid direct sunlight. (Use ...such that ...)
3. Samantha has bought some airtime. She wants to call her husband. (Use ...so that ...)
4. Lydia went to the barber's. She wanted to shave her hair. (Useso that ...)
5. The traffic officer came to our school. He wanted to talk about road safety. (Use ... so that ...)
6. I study Arabic. I want to read the Qur'an in the original. (Use ...so that ...)
7. Chemtai worked very hard. She wanted to win a gold medal. (Use ...such that ...)
8. The examination papers are opened in class. They want everyone to see there has been no cheating.
9. They called her Patience. They wanted to remember how long they had waited for her.
10. All the luggage is carried on the roof. They want there to be plenty of space for passengers.
11. All the voting takes place in secret. They want everybody to vote without fear.
12. A modern country must have an efficient police force. They want there to be law and order.
13. She hid her face. She did not want to be recognized.
14. The thief broke the windscreen. He wanted to steal the laptop.
15. The princess wore her best dress. She wanted to win the beauty contest.

16. The police always provides security to top officials. They don't want any harm to come to them.
17. We have put a fence all round the compound. We don't want anyone to see in.
18. He tied a rope to the cow's hind leg. He did not want it to run away.
19. The examination papers are opened in class. They want everyone to see there has been no cheating.
20. The officials insist that we should wear our face masks. They don't want us to contract the plague.
21. Farmers start planting at the beginning of the rainy season. They don't want their crops to have a stunted growth.
22. Zachariah climbed the tree. He wanted to see Jesus.
23. Mrs. Smith left the hairdresser's at five o'clock. She wanted to meet her husband outside the office.
24. The doctor gave her an injection of anaesthesia. He never wanted her to feel any pain.
25. He made all sorts of promises to the people. He wanted them to vote for him in the election.
26. The health officer poured oil onto the stagnant water. He wanted to prevent the mosquito larvae from breathing.
27. She told the children a story. She wanted them to feel overjoyed.
28. My father is strict with us. He wants us to grow into responsible children.
29. The modern potter uses a special kind of oven. He wants to produce the best pots.
30. The farmers burn areas of bush. They want to prepare the ground for planting.
31. The ship was sailing at top speed. They wanted to reach Port Harcourt on time.
32. We learn about the past. We want to understand the present.
33. Abattoirs were stopped from slaughtering the cows. The veterinary officers wanted to ascertain whether the cows were free from foot and mouth disease

SO /SUCH ... THAT

So is followed by an adjective, e.g.

- (c) so bad
- (d) so nice
- (e) so beautiful
- (f) so ugly
- (g) so wonderful
- (h) so intelligent

Such on the other hand is followed by an article + a noun, e.g.

- (i) such a bad man

- (j) such a nice week
- (k) such a beautiful lady
- (l) such an ugly sight
- (m) such a wonderful idea
- (n) such an intelligent boy

Consider:

- (a) It was very dark. The children could not go out alone.

It was so dark that the children could not go out alone.

It was such a dark night that the children could not go out alone.

- (b) The driver was very careless. He caused an accident.

The driver was so careless that he caused an accident.

He was such a careless driver that he caused an accident.

- (c) The music was very loud. We could hear it from miles away.

The music was so loud that we could hear it from miles away.

It was such loud music that we could hear it from miles away.

Activity I

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. It was spoken quietly. It was almost inaudible. (Use ...so ... that ...)
2. The road is very narrow. Many accidents occur on it daily. (Use ...such ...that ...)
3. The old woman was very sick. She was taken to the hospital. (Use ...sothat ...)
4. The story was so interesting that I could not avoid reading it. (Begin: It was such ...)
5. Sarah is very young. She cannot get married. (Use...**so**...**that**...)
6. It rained so heavily that the river burst its banks. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
7. Kahima is very short. He cannot touch the ceiling. (Use ...such ...that ...)
8. The nurse is a very caring person. She ensures that we miss our treatment. (Use ... so ... that ...)
9. Muhammad is a very honest man. Most people trust him with their money. (Use ...such an ...)
10. Primary Seven pupils are very busy. They attend swimming lessons. (Use ...so ... that ...)
1. The house is very big. It can accommodate ten people. (Use ...such ...that ...)

2. The road sign was faint. The motorist could not read it. (Use ...**so**...**that**...)
3. She is very beautiful. Every man wants to marry her. (Use ...such a ...)
4. Aminah is such a lazy girl that she cannot even sweep the compound. (Use ... so ... that ...)
5. Henry is very young. He cannot go to school. (Usesuch a ...)
6. My father was too drunk to drive a car. (Use ...**so**...**that**...)
7. The story was so funny that everyone could not help laughing. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
8. The road is very narrow. It cannot be used by big cars. (Use...**so**...**that**...)
1. The meeting was very abrupt. Almost no one was ready for it. (Use ...such ...)
2. Roanld is a very famous man. People in the village respect him. (Use ...so ...that ...)
3. He is very generous. He is able to pay school fees for many orphans. (Use ...such a)
4. The boy is very greedy. He cannot get satisfied. (Use ...so ...that ...)
5. The film was very interesting. Everyone enjoyed watching it. (Use ...such an ...)
6. Mukasa was very wise. He bought land after selling his onions. (Use ...so ...)
7. Sulaina is very bright. She cannot fail this test.(Use ...such ...)
8. The visiting school played very well. They won the trophy. (Use ...so ...that ...)
9. The sky was too clear for us to see the crescent. (Begin: It was such ...)
10. She is a naughty girl. She can make a goat break its tether. (Begin: She is such a ...)
11. It is a very touching story. Everybody will be moved after hearing it. (Begin: The story is so)
1. Sarah is very young. She cannot get married. (Use...**such**...**that**...)
2. It rained so heavily that the river burst its banks. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
3. Kaima is very short. He cannot touch the ceiling. (Use so ...)
4. The house is very big. It can accommodate ten people. (Use ... such ...)
5. The road sign was faint. The motorist could not read it. (Use ...**so**...**that**...)
6. She is very beautiful. Every man wants to marry her. (Use ...such a ...)
7. Henry is very young. He cannot go to school. (Use ...so ...)
8. My father was too drunk to drive a car. (Use ...**such**...**that**...)
9. The story was so funny that everyone could not help laughing. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
10. The road is very narrow. It cannot be used by big cars. (Use...**so**...**that**...)
11. The storm was very strong. It destroyed the new building. (Use such...)

DESPITE THE/ IN SPITE

Despite is followed by *the* while *In spite* is followed by *of*. Notice the spelling of *in spite of*; they are three words. Do not use *but* after *In spite/despite*. *Despite/In spite* is used to express a contrast just like *but*.

NB: When you begin with *In spite/Despite*, start with the dependent clause. When used within the sentence, start with the main clause.

Consider:

- (a) Amina was very wise but she failed the test.
In spite of the fact that Amina was wise, she failed the test.
Despite the fact that Amina was wise, she failed the test.
Amina failed the test in spite of the fact that she was poor.
Amina failed the test despite the fact that she was poor.
- (b) Jimmy is poor. He has many friends.
In spite of the fact that Jimmy is poor, he has many friends.
Despite the fact that Jimmy is poor, he has many friends.
Jimmy has many friends in spite of the fact that he is.
Jimmy has many friends despite the fact that he is poor.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. Messi is a tactic player but he did not score the penalty. (Begin: **Despite...**)
2. Cynthia cared so much. Her relationship with Jeffrey did not last long. (Begin: **In spite...**)
3. Abdallah was a rich man, but he was buried in two shrouds. (Use....**in spite**....)
4. Martin was courageous but he was scared of ghosts. (Use...**despite**....)
5. Brenda had not revised but she hoped to pass her exams. (Begin: **In spite...**)
6. The field was very wet. The children played in it. (Use...**despite**...)
7. My mother is illiterate but she can operate a phone. (Use...**in spite**....)
8. The pedestrian was innocent. The traffic officer arrested him. (Use ...**in spite**...)
9. They took supper on time but they went to bed late. (Begin: **Despite...**)
10. Sophia goes to school every day. She cant read or write. (Use...**despite**...)

ALPHABETICAL ORDER

REFLEXIVE AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Reflexive pronouns are found in such words as myself, ourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves, yourself, yourselves, and oneself.

Possessive pronouns are words like my, our, its, her, his, their, your, one's, and the like.

Consider:

- (a) She dressed the wounds herself.
- (b) One must respect oneself.
- (c) The dog ate the bone itself.
- (d) She had to snatch her bag from the thief.
- (e) A ewe and her four lambs were all grazing by the hillside.

Activity

1. Sarah wrote the composition without anybody's help. (End ... herself.)
2. He should take care of himself. (Begin: One ...)
3. I too have been a primary school pupil. (Use ...self ...)
4. They too do not always tell the absolute truth. (Begin: They themselves ...)
5. She herself will be old and frail one day. (Begin: We ...)
6. The candidates were determined to complete the task without anybody's help. (Endselves.)
7. Father and nobody else gave the injection. (Use ...self)
8. The stranger had to carry her luggage without help. (End ...self.)
9. You and your wife without anybody else manage the whole store. (Use ... self ...)
10. The Kikuyu ____ had to experience colonialism. (Rewrite and complete with a reflective pronoun)
11. Edith did not ask anybody to post the letter for her. (End ... herself.)
12. Did anyone help Doreen to dig the garden? (End ... herself?)

13. We ought to respect our prefects at school. (Begin: One ...)

Activity II

Complete each of the following items using the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. The wizard transformed ____ into a tree. (self)
2. One has to take care of _____. (one)
3. You must look after your children _____. (self)
4. The lion ____ chased the antelope. (it)
5. We had to sweep the compound _____. (us)
6. The seamstress ____ buttoned the gown. (she)
7. The pupils ____ sang the two anthems. (they)
8. Matovu ____ tidied the dirty house. (his)
9. One has to take care of ____ property. (one)
10. The manager took all ____ possessions in a suitcase. (him)
11. They cleared the garden all by _____. (they)
12. I couldn't take the coat because it was not _____. (my)

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE

In the active voice, the doer of the action is made clear.

Consider:

(a) Jane is sweeping the classroom.

(b) Jane swept the classroom.

In the passive voice, the attention falls on the action, not the doer. This voice uses the past participle verb form and begins with the tense of the verb to be.

(c) The classroom is being swept (by Jane).

(d) The classroom was swept (by Jane).

Study the table below for more enlightenment..

	Active voice	Passive voice
<i>Present continuous tense</i> (<i>Now tense</i>)	(i) They are sweeping the room. (ii) Michael is eating rice.	(i) The room is being swept. (ii) Rice is being eaten (by Michael)
<i>Present simple tense</i> (<i>Everyday tense</i>)	(i) They sweep the room. (ii) Michael eats rice.	(i) The room is swept. (ii) Rice is eaten (by Michael)
<i>Past continuous tense</i>	(i) They were sweeping the room. (ii) Michael was eating rice.	(i) The room was being swept. (ii) Rice was being eaten.
<i>Past simple tense</i> (<i>Yesterday tense</i>)	(i) They swept the room. (ii) Michael ate rice.	(i) The room was swept. (ii) Rice was eaten.
<i>Present perfect tense</i> (<i>Already tense</i>)	(i) They have swept the room. (ii) Michael has eaten rice.	(i) The room has been swept. (ii) Rice has been eaten.
<i>Future tense</i> (<i>Tomorrow tense</i>)	(i) They will sweep the room. (ii) Michael will eat rice.	(i) The room will be swept. (ii) Rice will be eaten.

NB: The imperative sentences begin with: Let.... when used in the passive voice, e.g.

(e) Bring that radio.

Let that radio be brought.

(f) Take this mess away.

Let this mess be taken away.

Activity I	Activity II
-------------------	--------------------

<p><i>Decide whether each of the following is active or passive.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Monkeys adore bananas. (active) 2. The cashier wanted the money. 3. The cat was chasing the rat. 4. The manager congratulated the employees on their work. 5. The employees were congratulated on their work. 6. The truck crashed into the building. 7. The film was released nationwide at the beginning of the month. 8. The experiment is being done by the chief scientist at the plant. 9. The golf ball was driven down the fairway. 10. In the ensuing confusion, the secret plans were revealed by the spy. <p>Activity III</p>	<p><i>Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Take the patient to the clinic. (Begin: Let ...) 2. The boy teased the girl. (Begin: The girl) 3. I did not beat him. (Begin: He was ...) 4. She will never forget the experience. (Begin: The experience ...) 5. The baker made a yummy cake yesterday. (Begin: A yummy ...) 6. Did he do his duty? (Begin: Was ...) 7. They always find diamonds in the riverbeds. (Begin: Diamonds ...) 8. We are watching you. (Begin: You) 9. They kicked me on the leg. (Begin: I was) 10. They have lent Brian a radio. (Begin: Brian ...)
---	--

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. They will soon tell you the result. (Begin: **You...**)

2. They offer everybody a free gift. (Begin: **Everybody...**)

3. They paid me ten pounds for doing it. (Begin: **I...**)

4. We have written hundreds of letters to the ministry. (Begin: **Hundreds...**)

5. Father has promised me a new bicycle. (Begin: **A new...**)

6. She will finish it tomorrow. (Begin: **It...**)

7. You will force him to agree. (Begin: **He...**)

8. They were attacking the president. (Begin: **The...**)

9. They are painting the door. (Begin: **The door...**)

10. They have chosen him secretary. (Begin: **He...**)

PREPOSITIONAL VERBS

A prepositional verb is a combination of a verb and preposition, e.g. shout at, think of, agree to, and so on.

In the passive voice, we end with the preposition.

Consider:

- (a) They never shout at children.

Children are never shouted at.

- (b) They will agree to it.

It will be agreed to.

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. They have already thought of that. (Begin: **That...**)
2. They can rely on him. (Begin: **He...**)
3. We must fight for certain things. (Begin: **Certain...**)
4. He sent for the doctor. (Begin: **The doctor...**)
5. She will deal with you. (Begin: **You...**)
6. You are still talking about it. (Begin: **It...**)
7. They often make fun of me. (Begin: **I...**)
8. They are calling for it. (Begin: **It...**)
9. Musa has written on this paper. (Begin: **This...**)
10. He has never asked for it. (Begin: **It...**)

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

Direct speech

Direct speech has two parts i.e. the speech tag and the quoted words enclosed by inverted commas. It presents the speaker's exact words.

Consider:

- (a) "I am learning French now," Lewis said.
- (b) Lewis said, "I am learning French now."
- (c) "My favourite fruit is banana," she said.
- (d) She says, "I am ill."
- (e) "Will you go to the party with me?" he asked me. "Yes," I replied.

Indirect speech

Indirect speech is also known as reported speech. It usually has three parts i.e. the speech tag, the conjunction *that* and the said words in the past tense. At times, *that* may be left out.

NB: Facts like (The sun rises in the east, a magnet attracts iron filings, etc.) are never reported in the past tense.

When the tense introducing reported speech is in the present, the whole report remains in the present.

Indirect speech does not use inverted commas, quotation marks or exclamation marks i.e. the actual words are never quoted.

Consider:

- (f) *Lewis said that he was learning French then.*
- (g) *She said that her favourite fruit was banana.*
- (h) *She says that she is ill.*
- (i) “Water boils at 100°C,” Mubiru said. (Drop the quotes)
Mubiru said that water boils at 100°C.
- (j) “Uranus spins like a top,” said the wise professor. (Use indirect speech)
The wise professor said that uranus spins like a top
- (k) He asked me if I would go with him to the party and I replied I would.

Notice the following crucial changes

Direct speech	Indirect speech
<u>Pronoun changes</u>	
I	He/she
We	They
You	I/she/he/we/they/us/me
She	She
He	He
It	It
My	His/hers

Our	Their
Ours	Theirs
Mine	His/hers
<u>Verb changes</u>	
Will/shall	Would
Can	Could
Could	Could
Must	Had to/must
Has/have	Had
May/might	Might
Should	Should
Saw	Ha seen
Was/were	Had been
Am/is	Was
Are	Were
<u>Changes in time and place</u>	
Now	Then
Here	There
Ago	Before
Tonight	That night
Today	That day
This	That
Tomorrow	The following day/the day after

Yesterday	Previous day/the day before
Last week	The previous week/the week before
Next week	The following week/the week after
<u>Tense changes</u>	
Present simple (every day tense)	Past simple
Present continuous (now tense)	Past continuous
Present perfect (already tense)	Past perfect
Past simple	Past perfect
Past continuous	Past continuous
Past perfect	Past perfect
Future simple	Future conditional

Direct and indirect questions

The following examples show how questions change from direct to indirect speech, e.g.

(a) “Who are you?” Anne asked.
Anne asked who I was.

(b) “Will it break?” he asked.
He asked if it would break.
He asked whether it would break.

(c) She said to me, “Where do you live?” (She asked...)
She asked me where I lived.

NB: Don’t use a question mark after an indirect question, and don’t invert the verb.

Direct and indirect commands and requests

(a) Mother said, “Go away.”
Mother told me to go away.

- (b) “Don’t be so silly,” Enid shouted.
 Enid asked me not to be so silly.
 Enid told me not to be so silly.

Activity I	Activity II
<p><i>Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. “A magnet attracts iron filings,” says the physics teacher. (Use reported speech) 2. Monic said, “I must report the thieves to the police.” 3. Linnet said that she would not come on the following day. (Use Linnet’s actual words) 4. “I shall go to Nairobi in June,” Martin said. (Begin: Martin said that ...) 5. He said that the earth rolls like a ball. (Use “...”) 6. MrOgundipe said, “I am very exhausted.” (Drop the quotation marks) 7. Helen said to me, “I hope you have enjoyed yourself.” (Begin: Helen told ...) 8. George said he would do his best. (Use direct speech) 	<p><i>Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. “You will soon be tired of it,” said my father. (Begin: My father told ...) 2. “You must read very hard,” Nambi said. (Begin: Nambi advised ...) 3. “I will come back,” Jesus said. (Begin: Jesus said that ...) 4. “Who has been teaching you?” asked the stranger. (Begin: The stranger wanted ...) 5. “You have the whole of this week to prepare for the wedding of our daughter. John said to his wife. (begin John told...) 6. “I hope I shall win the first prize in the competition.” Simon said. (Begin Simon hoped...) 7. You must finish your compositions before the end of the lesson

<p>9. She asked the motorist to give her a lift. (Use her actual words)</p> <p>10. "I will see you tonight," Sarah said. (Use reported speech)</p> <p>11. "Don't go there," said Tom. (Begin: Tom told her ...)</p> <p>12. "John must work hard this term," said the teacher. (Begin: The teacher said that ...)</p>	<p>as I am going to mark them this evening, said the teacher of English. (Begin The teacher...)</p> <p>8. I wonder how old Anne was. (Use "...")</p> <p>9. "Gentlemen, I am sorry, but the party must come to an end" announced the master of ceremonies. (Use ...regretted...)</p> <p>10. "How many trees did you plant last year?" she asked. (Use indirect speech)</p> <p>11. "I have lost my way to my father's farm," Julian said. (Drop the quotes)</p> <p>12. "Nansamba lost her ring," Nambi said. (Begin: Nambi said that ...)</p> <p>13. Kato said that Babirye helped her parents during the holidays. (End "...," said Kato.)</p> <p>14. "She is getting ready for her marriage," says Monica. (Begin: Monica said that ...)</p>
<p>Activity III</p> <p><i>Punctuate each of the following items correctly.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Please hand in your books said the class captain 2. I think said Afura English is not a difficult subject 3. Do you come here often she asked 4. After holidays said Atom we shall get ready for the tour 5. I shall miss you when you have gone whispered Jafar 6. When is the term ending asked the nurse 7. I asked Patricia what do you want from me 	

<p>8. Let them go for lunch said the chef</p> <p>9. I am lying to you said Kate</p> <p>10. Is this girl still sick asked the doctor</p>	
---	--

IF / EXCEPT IF/ UNLESS

Unless means *except if*. It is associated with conditional sentences.

NB: In the case of unless, we mostly use a negative in the main clause.

Consider:

- (a) If that girl does not stop receiving gifts from Mr. Tumbo, she will be expelled from school.
Unless that girl stops receiving gifts from Mr. Tumbo, she will be expelled from school.

The girl will be expelled from school unless she stops receiving gifts from Mr. Tumbo.
- (b) Except if you call watching television a hobby, I haven't got any hobbies.
Unless you call watching television a hobby, I haven't got any hobbies.
I haven't got any hobbies unless you call watching television a hobby.
- (c) If my car breaks down, I shall call the mechanic.
Unless my car breaks down, I shan't call the mechanic.
I shan't call the mechanic unless my car breaks down.
- (d) The teacher will mark your work only if you write well.
Unless you write well, the teacher won't mark your work.
The teacher won't mark your work unless you write well.
- (e) We must preserve the environment in order to get clean water.
Unless we conserve the environment, we will not get clean water.
We will not get clean water unless we conserve the environment.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. If you don't feed the cows well, they won't give you enough milk. (Begin: **Unless...**)

2. Unless we work hard, we shall not score good marks. (Begin: If ...)
3. If she doesn't wake up early, she will be late for school. (Use...**unless**...)
4. Except if you load airtime on your phone, you won't make any calls. (Use ...if ...)
5. If the road is not clear, please don't cross. (Begin: **Unless**....)
6. We shall not stop buying milk from the dairy unless our cow delivers this month. (Begin: Except if ...)
7. If we do our work in time, we shall have enough time to rest. (Use...**unless**...)
8. You will be allowed to drive if you have a driving licence. (Begin: **Except if**...)
9. They will be promoted to the next class if they perform well. (Begin: **Unless**....)
10. If she doesn't help us, we will not complete in time. (Use....**unless**....)
11. Your body will produce a bad odour unless you bathe regularly. (Use ...if ...)
12. You will catch malaria if you don't sleep under a treated mosquito net. (Begin: **Unless**...)
13. Linda will miss the flight unless she comes today. (Begin: Except if ...)
14. If it doesn't rain, the farmers won't have a good harvest this year. (Begin: **Unless**...)
15. Unless the cyclist respects other road users, he will be arrested. (Begin: If ...)
16. Your letter will get lost if you don't put a return address. (Use....**unless**...)
17. If Joan doesn't change her behaviour, she won't get a serious man. (Begin: Unless Joan ...)
18. Except if the pass mark is lowered, the pupils will fail this test. (Begin: If ...)
19. If she comes to school late, she will be punished. (Use ... unless ...)
20. Unless the thief is arrested, we shall have no peace. (Begin: Except if)

USED FOR AND USED TO

Consider:

(a) A plane is used to smooth wood.

A plane is used for smoothing wood.

(b) A broom is used for tidying the compound.

A broom is used to tidy the compound.

Activity

Rewrite each of the following items as instructed in the brackets.

1. We use a hammer to hit the nails. (Begin: A hammer is it used for ...)
2. A carjack is used for raising the car off the ground. (Begin: The mechanic uses ...)
3. What is timber used for? (Begin: Timber is used for....., and use make in your answer)
4. They use banana fibres to tie sticks. (Begin: Banana fibres are used)

5. A belt is used for tightening the trousers. (Use ...to tighten)
6. She uses a dictionary to look up difficult words. ((Useused for))
7. The moon is used for brightening the night. (Begin: The moon is used to ...)
8. The seamstress uses a pair of scissors to cut the cloth. (Use ...used for)
9. A bolas was used for trapping fast running animals. (Use ...used to ...)
10. We use a ring to show commitment to our spouses. (Begin: A ring is used for ...)
11. An oven is used for baking bread. (Begin: The baker uses ...)
12. A knife is used to slice onions. (Use used for ...)
13. The farmers used pesticides to control pests. (Begin: Pesticides are used for ...)
14. Tear gas is used by the police to control riots. (Use ...used for ...)
15. Icing sugar is used for decorating cakes. (Use ...used to ...)
16. The mechanic uses a spanner to turn nuts. (Use ...used for ...)
17. A spoon is used for mixing sugar. (Begin: Mother uses a spoon to ...)
- 18.

AS MUCH AS/ EQUALLY/ TWICE AS MUCH/ ETC.

Consider:

- (a) James would rather play football than watch movies. (Use ...as much as...)

James doesn't like watching movies as much as playing football.

- (b) I would rather work tirelessly than beg people for money.

Idon't like begging people for money as much as working tirelessly.

- (c) Yellow House scored half as many points as Purple House. (Use ...twice...)

Purple House scored twice as many points as Yellow House.

- (d) My father is a tall man. Your father is a tall man. (Use equally....)

Your father is equally as tall as mine.

Activity

Rewrite each item as instructed in the brackets.

1. You have got more money than I do. (Use ... as much as ...)
2. I know as many people as you. (Begin: You know ...)
3. She doesn't go out as much as her husband. (Begin: Her husband ...)
4. Andy doesn't work very hard. Laura works very hard. (Use ... not as much as...)
5. The boys watch soaps so much. The girls watch soaps so much. (Use ...as much ...)
6. You eat more than me. (Begin: I ..

SOME AND ANY

Some is used in positive/affirmative sentences. It is also used in interrogative sentences especially questions that expect the answer, yes/no. Any is used in negative sentences. It is also used in interrogative sentences in which you are doubtful if the answer.

NB: This is the ordinary use of some and any as articles.

Consider:

(a) There is some rubber solution in the tube. (Affirmative)

There isn't any rubber solution in the tube. (Negative)

Is there some rubber solution in the tube? (Interrogative)

Is there any rubber solution in the tube? (Interrogative)

(b) I need something from you.

I don't need anything from you.

Do I need something from you?

Do I need anything from you?

Activity

Fill in some, something, somebody, someone, somewhere, any or anybody, anything, anywhere, or any one to complete each of the following.

1. My mother has bought ____ oranges.
2. There are ____ bad mistakes in this letter.
3. I have ____ gardening to do.
4. There aren't ____ bad mistakes in this letter.
5. I haven't ____ gardening to do.
6. My mother hasn't bought ____ oranges.
7. She wants ____ to drink.
8. He is writing to ____.
9. I will look for a job ____ else.
10. She married ____ else.
11. Serve me ____ rice please.
12. Would you like ____ milk?
13. Is there ____ rice in the bag?
14. There isn't ____ bread left.
15. May I have ____ coffee, please?
16. We haven't got ____ sugar.
17. Did you buy ____ rice? No, we don't need ____.
18. There is ____ waiting for you at the entrance.
19. I don't need to go ____ right now.

SPELLING DRILLS

Use only small letters to spell each of the following words.

Activity I	Activity II	Activity III
1. careful	1. pronunciation	1. oneself
2. grateful	2. argument	2. himself
3. wonderful	3. until	3. herself
4. useful	4. grammar	4. yourself
5. merciful	5. woollen	5. yourselves
6. powerful	6. abattoir	6. ourselves
7. thankful	7. interesting	7. themselves
8. respectful	8. amongst	8. itself

9. handful 10. helpful 11. skilful 12. fulfill 13. hopeful 14. peaceful 15. plateful	9. twenty-one 10. forty 11. laughter 12. slaughter 13. writing 14. thorough 15. referred	9. a lot 10. noticeable 11. relieved 12. surprise 13. solemn 14. stubborn 15. surrender
Activity IV 1. everything 2. everybody 3. everyone 4. anything 5. something 6. everywhere 7. anywhere 8. somewhere 9. elsewhere 10. tuition 11. dining 12. quote 13. laziest 14. classroom 15. welfare Activity VIII 34. maintenance 35. mountainous 36. carpentry 37. cough 38. tough 39. colleague 40. bury 41. burial 42. boycott 43. discipline 44. dialogue 45. earnest 46. enmity 47. heavily 48. truly	Activity V 49. variety 50. unanimous 51. unique 52. tolerate 53. sympathise 54. surround 55. success 56. succeed 57. suspicious 58. speech 59. remedy 60. remedial 61. repetition 62. quarrel 63. mysterious Activity IX 1. argument 2. twelfth 3. ninth 4. scissors 5. misspell 6. procedure 7. privilege 8. committee 9. dormitory 10. except 11. expect 12. accept 13. excel 14. hygiene 15. harass	Activity VI 1. handwriting 2. writing 3. moustache 4. necessary 5. pleasure 6. pastime 7. professor 8. pursue 9. queue 10. quite 11. quiet 12. quit 13. syllable 14. syllabus 15. museum Activity X 1. embarrass 2. interrupt 3. integrity 4. visitor 5. liar 6. leisure 7. tomorrow 8. rainy 9. amongst 10. prepare 11. cardboard 12. cupboard 13. corroborate 14. collaborate 15. travelling
Activity XI 1. paid	Activity XII 1. first	Activity XIII 1. signature

2. robbery 3. hurriedly 4. misery 5. miserly 6. miserable 7. lying 8. dyeing 9. dying 10. vying 11. laid 12. necessary 13. furniture 14. choir 15. succeed	2. second 3. third 4. fourth 5. fifth 6. eleventh 7. twelfth 8. twentieth 9. fortieth 10. fiftieth 11. sixtieth 12. seventieth 13. eightieth 14. ninetieth 15. hundredth	2. bravely 3. bravery 4. tongue 5. grew 6. blew 7. flew 8. crew 9. lose 10. loose 11. successor 12. opposer 13. proposer 14. brown 15. blown
XIV 1. tidily 2. heartily 3. shabbily 4. landlord 5. landlady 6. headmaster 7. headmistress 8. headteacher 9. in case 10. no sooner 11. so that 12. highway 13. choked 14. automated 15. reclamation	XV reverend casualty	

SECTION B

(Comprehension)

SHORT PASSAGES

- While attempting passages, notices, poems, etc., endeavor to maintain the tense and voice of the question, e.g.

When did Monica go to the market?

Monica went to the market on Tuesday. (Not Monica go to the market on Tuesday)

Who wrote the letter?

Emily wrote the letter. (Not The letter was written by Emily)

By whom was the letter written?

The letter was written by Emily. (Not Emily wrote the letter)

Who has written the letter?

Emily has written the letter.

- Observe the word order, e.g.
According to the passage, who who is Jane?
According to the passage, Jane is a hardworking young girl.

Who is Jane according to the passage?

Jane is a hardworking young girl according to the passage.

Why do you think the writer is happy in the story?

I think the writer is happy because of the surprise gift from her pen pal.

- The best way to suggest a suitable title for the passage is by writing it in capital letters only, e.g. A MADMAN IN THE MARKET
- Apart from dates and the like, try as much as possible to use words, not figures, e.g.

How much did it cost him?

It cost him fifty thousand pounds. (Not £50,000)

When will the show take place?

The show will take place on 5th April, 2023 (Not 5/4/2023, 5th April, 2023)

How long did the discussions take?

The discussions took three hours. (Not 3 hours)

- You should mind your punctuation i.e. commas, full stops, and so on.
- Answer using full sentences unless the question expects a short answer.

Consider:

Read the passage carefully and answer, in full sentences, the questions that follow.

It was holiday time and most of the children in the neighborhood had come back from school. We had a lot of time to play in the evening. Our favourite game was hide and seek. This game became boring as we knew all the hiding places.

One day, we decided to make vehicles. We wanted to see who would make a better one. I wanted to win this. I moved to Simba Garage. I asked the mechanic to give me the old spokes. The mechanic happily allowed me to pick them from the heap of rubbish. I also needed some rubber bands to tie the spokes. The mechanic gave me an old tyre which I cut. I also needed wheels for my car. I knew the old slippers would serve that purpose. I got some and cut out the wheels.

Since I had got all the materials that I needed, I sat at home and made my vehicle. I made it in two days. I then checked on my friends to see how far they had gone with theirs. My friend Lutu had made his out of a Jerry can. It looked beautiful though mine was stronger. Jacob had made his vehicle out of a box. Beker had failed to make his because he did not get the materials. We proudly drove our toy vehicles around the village. All the children admired them.

Questions

(a) When did the children play?

The children played during the holidays. (Not In the holidays)

(b) Which game did the children enjoy playing?

The children enjoyed playing hide and seek.

(c) Why did the children lose interest in the game?

The children lost interest in the game because they knew all the hiding places.

(d) Where did the writer get the materials according to the passage?

The writer got the material from Simba Garage according to the passage.

(e) Where are the spokes?

The spokes are in a heap of rubbish.

(f) Why was the writer's car better than Lutu's?

The writer's car was better than Lutu's because it was stronger.

(g) How many children made toy cars?

Three children made toy cars (Not There are three children who made toy cars)

(h) Write another word to mean

- heap pile mountain/mass

- needed wanted

(j) What is the passage about?

The passage is about toy cars.

Read the passage carefully and answer in full sentences the questions that follow.

These days, communication is possible through a variety of media. People can talk to their relatives using telephones, through letters, sending telegrams and many others. In Business Organizations, information is transmitted to all employees. A notice may be put up on the notice board or circulated among them. A Senior Officer may announce it over the public address system or it may be printed in the office bulletin. Posters may be used to issue warnings. Communication with Government Departments is mostly conducted through written letters. The general public may be reached through advertisements on the radio, televisions, Newspapers and popular journals.

For communication to be effective, the communicator has to be careful with the choice of media.

All in all, effective communication is necessary because it transforms the community in which we live.

Questions

1. What is the passage about?

.....
.....

2. How many channels of communication are talked about in the passage?

.....
.....
.....
.....

3. How can a Senior Officer in some organizations pass on information to the employee?

.....
.....
.....
.....

4. What should be used to issue warnings?

.....
.....
.....
.....

5. How does the government mostly conduct communication in different departments?

.....
.....
.....
.....

6. How can the general public be reached?

.....
.....

.....
.....

7. Of the two, a radio and a television, which one receives audio-visual communication from?

.....
.....

.....
.....

8. Why is effective communication necessary?

.....
.....

.....
.....

9. Mention one way a pupil in a boarding school can communicate to the parents.

.....
.....

.....
.....

10. Give the passage a suitable title.

Activity

Read the passage carefully and answer in full sentences the questions that follow.

Although our country Uganda is a third-world growing country, we can still

do something in order to help reduce the increasing number of accidents on our roads. So many people have passed away in road accidents. It is time to reduce this terrible untimely danger which is spreading throughout Uganda like bush fire?

First of all, we have to know what causes road accidents. The main cause is the carelessness of drivers who drive their cars without following the road signs and regulations. These drivers should be tested properly before they are given driving permits. They should not be allowed to overload their vehicles or drink alcohol before driving.

Vehicles must be properly checked before they are driven. Vehicles in dangerous mechanical conditions should be removed from the road. Roads should be carefully constructed and widened to reduce the problem of traffic jam. Zebra crossings should be put in place where many people cross the road on foot. Enough road signs should be put along the roads to warn the drivers on what to do. More traffic lights should be placed at cross-roads to control the traffic and maintain order.

In addition to that, the public must be taught how to use road properly. This can be done on radios and televisions through Newspapers and at local council meetings.

Finally, the traffic officers should not accept any bribes from wrong drivers, as this leads to more accidents. If we work as a team in this battle, we shall reduce the number of road accidents in Uganda

Questions

1. What is the passage about?
2. According to the passage, how are road accidents spreading throughout

Uganda?

3. What is the main cause of road accidents in Uganda?
4. What kind of vehicle should be removed from the road?
5. Why must roads be properly constructed and widened?
6. Why should enough road sign be put along the road?
7. How can the public be taught how to use roads properly?
8. Who should not accept bribes according to the passage?
9. Give another word or group of words with the same meaning as

“passed away”.

10. Suggest a suitable title to the passage

Activity II

Read the passage carefully and in full sentences answer the questions that follow.

WRITING A COMPOSITION

A composition is a creative piece of writing on a particular topic. There are three types of compositions i.e. a jumbled composition, a picture composition and a creative composition.

Let's focus on a creative composition at the moment, shall we?

Tips

- It must have a short title (suitably three to four words, in capital letters and in the centre of the page)
- Use indented paragraphs. An indented paragraph begins at most a centimetre off the margin.
- Do not skip a line between the title and the first paragraph, and do not skip a line between paragraphs. Skipping lines disjoins your writing.
- Use at least three logically flowing paragraphs.
- The contents of your composition must be got from the question.
- Avoid using short forms and contractions like don't, didn't, and so on. These are considered informal, and inappropriate for academic writing.
- Using merit language e.g. idioms, phrasal verbs, etc. will colour your writing.
- Count the words used, and indicate them in brackets on the bottom right of your composition.

Consider:

Write a composition of not more than 130 words about a holiday you enjoyed with your siblings. Talk about the hotel you visited and what you ate there.

AN ENJOYABLE HOLIDAY

It was an early May morning during last holiday when my siblings and I made up our mind to do something that would bring smiles on our faces. Many suggestions were put on the table, but the idea of visiting a hotel seemed to us the most exciting.

Next day, we set out for Speke Resort Hotel in Munyonyo. It was a two – hour journey.

Reaching the resort, we were welcomed by the a nice – looking receptionist. She led us to the empty table at which we sat. We enjoyed mouth – watering matooke, rice, fish and ice cream. What a holiday it was!

(126 words used)

Activity

1. Write a composition of 100 words about a debate you attended. What was the motion?
Who won the debate, and how did they celebrate their victory?
- 2.

JUMBLED COMPOSITION

This is a short composition whose sentences are not in order. It is up to you to arrange them into the correct sequence.

Tips

- Number your work according to the used numbering for easy identification of your answers while marking, e.g. (i), (ii), etc.; (a), (b), etc. or 1, 2, etc.
- Identify the flow of ideas in the story. You may use a small box like the one shown below.

Wrong	A	b	
Correct			

- Mind your grammar.
- Try to identify the linking words in the sentences.
-

PICTURE COMPOSITION

This is a composition told by pictures. These pictures tend to be numbered from A – F or 1 – 6.

Tips

- Use the present continuous or the present perfect tense to describe Pictures A - F, e.g. A girl is cleaning the room or A girl has cleaned the room/ Some girls are cleaning the room.
- Use active voice, not passive while describing, e.g. A girl is cleaning the room (Not The room is being cleaned by a girl.)
- Use article *A* when talking about something or somebody for the first time. Use *The* when you have already talked about something, e.g. A girl is cleaning a room. The girl is closing the room.

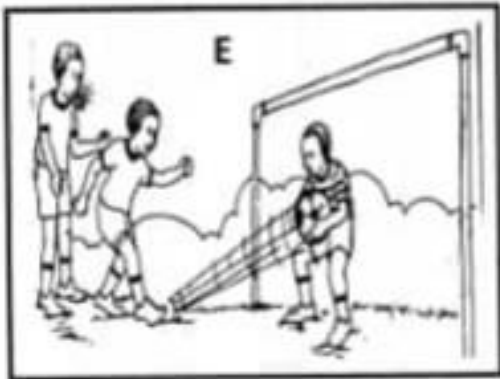
- Follow the tense and the voice of the question to answer parts g – j

Consider:

Example I

Pictures A – F tell a story. Study them carefully and write one sentence to describe what is happening in each picture. You may use the given words below to help you.

welcome, arrive, footballers, goalkeeper, referee, line-up, linesman, hold, penalty kick, headteacher, ball, dress-up, alight, fall down, team, playground
--



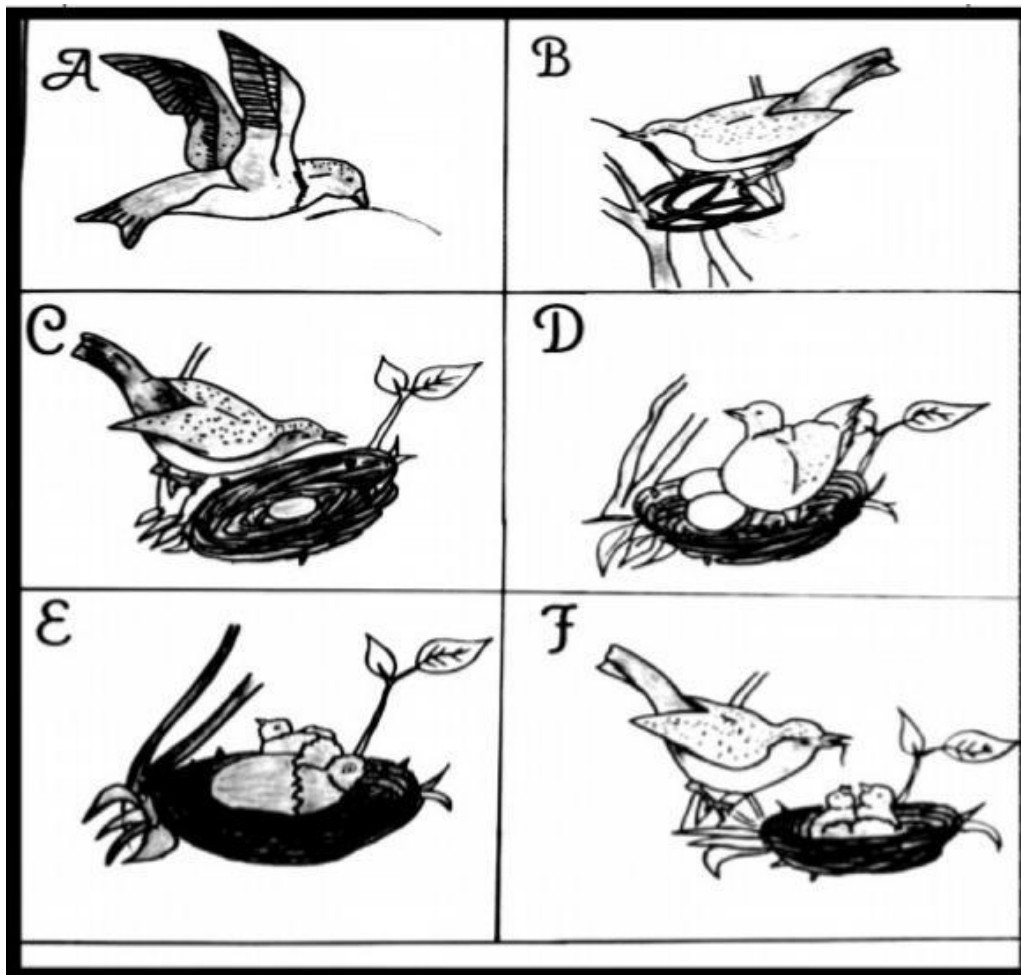
- (a) Picture A
- (b) Picture B
- (c) Picture C
- (d) Picture D
- (e) Picture E
- (f) Picture F
- (g) Which school is hosting the match?
- (h) Who was the tallest man in Picture D?
- (i) Which team do you think was trying to score in Picture D?

(j) Suggest a suitable title to the picture story.

Example II

Pictures A – F tell a story. Study them carefully and write one sentence to describe what is happening in each picture. You may use the given words below to help you.

bird, stick, make, nest, lay, egg, hatch, feed, nestlings



- (a) Picture A
- (b) Picture B
- (c) Picture C
- (d) Picture D
- (e) Picture E
- (f) Picture F
- (g) How many eggs did the bird lay?
- (h) What has happened to the egg in Picture E?

- (i) Why do you think the bird is responsible in Picture F?
- (j) Where has the bird laid the egg?

POEMS

Poetry is writing that involves lines and stanzas. From one stanza to another, you skip a line. It is applied in writing poems.

Prose on the other hand is writing that involves sentences and paragraphs. From one paragraph to another, you needn't skip a line. It is applied in compositions, letters, dialogues, announcements, advertisements, and so on.

In this lesson, let's focus our attention on poems, shall we?

COMMON TERMS RELATED TO POEMS

(a) Rhyme

This is when words have the same sound at the end, e.g. city and beauty are rhyming words.

(b) Alteration

This is when words have the same sound at the beginning, as in, sing a song of sixpence.

NB: You must follow the golden rules while answering poem questions as well.

Consider:

Read the poem below carefully and then answer, in full sentences, the questions that follow.

Hate me not

For not visiting you often

I am busy looking for timber

Because trees are no more

In Kongero Forest.

Hate me not

For not helping you yesterday

I was busy removing rubbish from the trenches

So that water can flow properly

In Hutu Village.

Hate me not

For not fulfilling my promise

Of getting papyrus from the swamp

Because there wasn't any

When I visited the swamp yesterday.

(Ariel)

Questions

(a) What is keeping the writer busy in stanza one?

Looking for timber is keeping the writer busy in stanza one. (Not Looking for timber)

(b) Where did the writer look for trees?

The writer looked for trees in Kongero Forest. (Not Kongero)

(c) When was the rubbish removed?

The rubbish was removed the day before. (Not The rubbish was removed yesterday.)

(d) Where was the rubbish?

The rubbish was in the trenches. (Not Trenches/In the trenches was the rubbish)

(e) In which village are the trenches?

The trenches are in Hutu Village. (Not Hutu Village/In Hutu Village are the trenches)

(f) What was the promise?

The promise was to get papyrus from the swamp. (Not To get papyrus from the swamp)

(g) Why hasn't the author got the papyrus?

The author hasn't got the papyrus because there isn't any. (Not There isn't any)

(h) When did the writer go to the swamp?

The writer went to the swamp the day before. (Not yesterday)

(i) How many stanzas are in the poem?

There are three stanzas in the poem

(j) Who wrote the poem?

Ariel wrote the poem.

Activity

LETTER WRITING

There are two types of letters i.e. informal and formal letters.

INFORMAL LETTERS

You write a friendly letter to your friends, relatives and acquaintances. Informal letters are also known as personal or friendly letters.

NB: Friendly letters have only one address.

EXAMPLES OF INFORMAL LETTERS

- Love letter
- Apology letter
- Invitation letter
- Condolence letter

Format for friendly letter

- Writer's address (Appears on the top left hand side. Capitalise only the first letters), e.g.

Charles Wamala Grammar School

PO Box 23

Isingiro

- Date (e.g. 12th May 2023. Not 12th May, 2023 12/May/2023). It comes immediately after the writer's address. Skip a line before writing the date, e.g.

Charles Wamala Grammar School

PO Box 23

Isingiro

12th May 2023

- Greeting/salutation (Appears on the margin on the left hand side. Use the first name, e.g. Charles, Emily, Hajjara, etc. Do not use Dear Sir, Dear Madam, Dear Doctor, etc.

Dear Maryam,	Dear Emily,	Dear Mum,	Hi Lisa,
Dear Mohsen,	Dear Andrew,	Dear Uncle,	Hey Samantha,
Dear Aamal,	Dear Osbert,	Dear Aunt,	Hello Susan,

- Body (One, two or three paragraphs. A block paragraph begins on the margin). Skip a line every time you begin a new paragraph.
- Concluding remarks (Appear on the bottom left hand corner. Just like in the greetings, use only the first name in your conclusion. Capitalise the first letter. Never use Yours faithfully in a friendly letter.

From your son, Andrew	Lots of love, Doreen	Best wishes, Hamuza
--------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------

From your lovely niece, Emily	Hugs and kisses, Jessica	Yours truly, Indiana
From your bosom friend, Fred	Love, Aamal	From your best cousin, Lillian
Yours sincerely, Esah		

Consider:

Imagine you are Ayesha, a pupil at Winners Junior School, PO Box 5, Mukono. You are enjoying your holidays. Write a letter to your friend Lisa telling her how you are doing, the games you are playing. Ask her if you can meet before schools resume. Use your school address.

Winners Junior School,

PO Box 5,

Mukono.

12thMay 2023

Dear Lisa,

It's been such a long time since we parted. I'm doing fine and hope you too are doing well.

I work during weekdays. I am driven around in a van selling ice cream to the children.

On weekends, I play hide and seek with my friends. We climb hills, sing songs and have lots of fun. You can never say that I am a boring girl. Can we meet before schools resume?

Lots of love,

Ayesha

Activity

1. Imagine you have just completed your PLE from CW Grammar School, PO Box 23, Isingiro. Write a letter to your aunt thanking her for supporting you throughout primary school with school fees, buying shoes, books, uniforms and other requirements. Promise that you will never let her down when you join secondary school.
2. Imagine you are Simon, a pupil at Murema Primary School, PO Box 11, Mbarara. Your school has organised an educational tour to Rippon Falls in Jinja. Write a letter to your uncle requesting for the money to be paid. Include the amount of money and the deadline for paying. Promise that you will behave well while on the tour. Use your school address.

FORMAL LETTERS

You write a formal letter to people who have offices, e.g. head teachers, headmasters, headmistresses, teachers, chairpersons, members of parliament, presidents, district education officers, and so on. Formal letters are also known as official letters.

NB: Remember to use formal language as much as possible. Avoid contractions and short forms like I'm, She's, won't, and so on. End your letter *Yours sincerely* if you use a person's title and name in your greetings. Otherwise, use *Yours faithfully*.

EXAMPLES OF FORMAL LETTERS

- Application letter
- Apology letter
- Invitation letter
- Condolence letter
- Recommendation letter
- Complaint letter
- Resignation letter
- Request letter

Format for an indented formal letter

- Writer's address (Appears on the top right corner. It should be slanted)
- Date
- Receiver's address (Appears on the left hand side. It must all start from the margin)
- Greeting/salutation (Must sound formal), e.g.

Dear Sir,	Dear Professor,	Dear Mr. Michael,
-----------	-----------------	-------------------

Dear Madam,	Dear Doctor Isaac,	Dear Engineer,
Dear Doctor,	Dear Professor Esah,	Dear Honourable Simon,
Dear Mister President	Dear Madam Speaker,	Dear Honourable Minister,

- Reference/title/subject. This is the heading of the letter! It can tell you the kind of formal letter you are writing. Remember to use Re:, not RE: Re stands for Reference yet RE stands for Religious Education.

Re: APPLICATION FOR A VACANCY	Re: <u>Application for a vacancy</u>
Re: APPLICATION FOR A TEACHING POST	Re: <u>Application for a teaching post</u>
Re: APOLOGY FOR BREAKING A DESK	Re: <u>Apology for breaking a desk</u>
Re: INVITATION TO THE LEAVERS' PARTY	Re: <u>Invitation to the leavers' party</u>
Re: COMPLAINT ABOUT WATER SHORTAGE	Re: <u>Complaint about water shortage</u>

- Body (Not more than three indented paragraphs)
- Concluding remarks, e.g.

Yours faithfully, Ahumuza Maryam AHUMUZA MARYAM Applicant	Yours truly, Itungo Mohsen ITUNGO MOHSEN Client	Yours sincerely, KobugabeAamal KOBUGABE AAMAL Supplier
--	--	---

APPLICATION LETTER

--

APOLOGY LETTER

--

COMPLAINT LETTER

--

WORD SPACING

Improper spacing of your words is one of the key areas that may stand in the way of your academic excellence. You must ensure the correct spacing or else fail to get that long - awaited distinction.

Consider:

Correct spacing	Wrong spacing
and so on	and soon
indeed	in deed
I ran	Iran
A boy	aboy
A tree	atree
A man	aman
A cat	acat
A car	acat
A van	avan
A cap	acap
A hat	ahat
A hen	ahen
loan	ban
football	foot ball
netball	net ball
volleyball	volley ball
something	some thing
anything	any thing
somebody	some body
elsewhere	else where

somewhere	some where
No sooner	Nosooner
in case	incase
I was	Iwas
do not	donot
was not	wasnot
cannot	can not
I am	Iam
is not	isnot
itself	it self
classroom	class room
headmaster	head master
headmistress	head mistress
headteacher	head teacher
landlord	land lord
landlady	land lady
so that	sothat
shall not	shallnot
will not	willnot
The	The
letter	leHer
teacher	toachor
uses	wes
used	wed
class	dash

a lot up early	alot upearly
-------------------	-----------------

Activity

1. I woke up early in the morning.
2. She was in our class.
3. You need to drink a lot of water.
4. A hammer is used for hitting nails.
5. We wrote letters to our pen pals.
6. They got a loan from Stanbic Bank.
7. In case of emergency, call 911.
8. It was a boy wearing a cap.
9. No sooner had I reached the station than the train left.
10. It was unbelievable.

IDIOMS FOR KIDS

An idiom is a group of words whose meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words. Colour your language by speaking fluent and idiomatic English.

Below is a compilation of common idioms for young ones like you. Will you start using them especially in your spoken and written English?

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. a broken reed – an unstable person: We cannot rely on Juliet; she is a broken reed. 2. a shrinking violet – a shy person: Jane couldn't look you straight in the eye – she was such a shrinkingviolet. 3. a night owl – a person who sleeps late in the night: My father watches television beyond midnight. He is a night owl. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 48. around the clock – all day and all night 49. in vain – without success 50. donkey's years – a long period of time 51. green with envy – very jealous 52. bury your head in the sand – to pretend as if there's no problem 53. make sb's hair stand on end – to make sb very scared
--	---

<p>4. a bright spark – an intelligent person: Henry came on top of the class – he is a bright spark.</p> <p>5. a wet blanket – a person who discourages others: I don't know what is wrong with Catherine. Whenever I try something, she is always against it. She is such a wet blanket.</p> <p>6. a bosom friend – a very close friend: My mother was always my bosom friend.</p> <p>7. a jack of all trades – a person who thinks they can do everything: Back home, I am my own plumber, my own gardener, my own electrician and a jack of all trades.</p> <p>8. an eager beaver – an alert and energetic person</p> <p>9. a workhorse – a person you can rely on for difficult and tiring work.</p> <p>10. teacher's pet - The teacher's favorite student: She has always been the teacher's pet.</p> <p>11. a snake in the grass – a traitor: We cannot trust Sam with our secrets; he is a snake in the grass.</p> <p>12. be a catch – be sb worth marrying/having: Jimmy is taking me out tonight. I hope he proposes; he is such a catch.</p> <p>13. a henpecked husband – a man whose wife torments him</p> <p>14. sb's face lights up – Somebody feels so happy: Her face lit up when she saw her mother after two years.</p> <p>15. a grey area - Something unclear: Exactly what can be called an offensive weapon is still a grey area.</p> <p>16. crunch time – very busy frenetic time: This is crunch time for our candidate classes</p> <p>17. Dig in one's heels – to refuse to compromise or change: My parents wanted me to give up writing, but I dug in my heels and went on to become a famous writer.</p> <p>18. draw a blank – To get no response or result: So far the police investigation has drawn a blank.</p>	<p>54. have other fish to fry – to have other things to do</p> <p>55. nip in the bud – to deal with sth at an early stage</p> <p>56. take a back seat – to avoid taking an active role in sth</p> <p>57. by hook or crook – by fair or unfair means</p> <p>58. go Dutch – to agree to share the cost of sth</p> <p>59. cock and bull story – an unlikely story</p> <p>60. cook the books – to change the facts</p> <p>61. shed light - if you shed light on sth, you make it clearer and easy to understand</p> <p>62. x-rated - not suitable for children</p> <p>63. written all over your face - if an has done sth wrong or a secret, but can't hide it in their expression, it is written all over their face</p> <p>64. within a whisker - if you come within a whisker of doing sth, you very nearly manage to do it but don't succeed</p> <p>65. wild goose chase - a waste of time spent trying to do sth unsuccessfully</p> <p>66. top notch - excellent/of highest quality</p> <p>67. take your breath away - if sth takes your breath away, it astonishes you</p> <p>68. fish out of water - Being somewhere you don't belong: She was the only one wearing a skimpy dress. Everyone else was clad in long dress. She was a fish out of water.</p> <p>69. let the cat out of the bag/spill the beans - Tell a secret: I wanted it to be a surprise, but my sister spilled the beans.</p> <p>70. snail's pace - To move extremely slowly: After the recent lockdown, the country's economy is now at a snail's pace.</p> <p>71. be taken aback - To be shocked or surprised: I was taken aback by his coming.</p> <p>72. to tie the knot/to walk down the aisle – To get married.</p> <p>73. behind bars – In prison: The rapist was caught by the police and he is now behind bars.</p> <p>74. but for – without/if it wasn't for: But for our soldiers, there wouldn't be peace in our country.</p>
---	---

<p>19. get your act together - Behave properly: The naughty boys were ordered to get their act together.</p> <p>20. pinch of salt – used when you are skeptical about about sth/sb: The detectives have to take everything said by the suspect with a pinch of salt.</p> <p>21. zip your lips – be quiet: The boisterous boys were told to zip their lips.</p> <p>22. freak out – to become very angry, scared or excited: He freaked out when she slipped off the roof.</p> <p>23. give it a shot - To try to do something: Give it your best shot, but you won't do it in time.</p> <p>24. have second thoughts - Have doubts: I had second thoughts about joining the army.</p> <p>25. in hot water - Be in trouble: We were in hot water; the teacher caught us dodging classes.</p> <p>26. in the same boat - Be in the same difficult situation: Many of the interns did not know the hang of things at the company. They were all in the same boat.</p> <p>27. miss the boat - You missed your chance: I should have applied for the job last week. I just missed the boat.</p> <p>28. out of the blue/ on the spur of the moment - With no warning: Out of the blue, the stone hit the bird.</p> <p>29. read between the lines - Find the hidden meaning: Reading between the lines, I think Clara needs money.</p> <p>30. the icing on the cake - Something additional that turns good into great: There was plenty of food, lots of good people, but country music was the ice on the cake.</p> <p>31. on your feet again/up and about/hale and hearty – healthy: After two weeks of being bedridden, I am now up and about.</p> <p>32. keep an eye on sb/sth – to watch sb/sth: We told our neighbours to keep an eye on our house while we were away.</p>	<p>75. had better – should: You had better consult the doctor.</p> <p>76. give up the ghost/breathe your last – to die: The old man breathed his last night.</p> <p>77. bury the hatchet/ bury your differences – stop fighting or arguing: Democrats and Republicans must bury their differences.</p> <p>78. make a dash for sth – to quickly run or walk towards sth: My father dashed for the door when he heard the knock.</p> <p>79. out of hand – difficult to control: The party got out of hand and the guests threw bottles at each other.</p> <p>80. a bed of roses – easy and comfortable life: Their life together has not been a bed of roses.</p> <p>81. a narrow escape/a close shave – a lucky escape: Some motorists almost knocked me this morning; I had a close shave.</p> <p>82. over the moon/on cloud nine/all smiles/thrilled to bits – very happy: She was thrilled to bits at her graduation.</p> <p>83. dressed up to the nines – very smart: Sarah was dressed up to the nines at the picnic.</p> <p>84. down in the dumps – very sad: We were all down in the dumps after losing two consecutive matches.</p> <p>85. owing to – because of: Owing to the torrential rains, the road is now slippery.</p> <p>86. badly off/in the red – very broke: He was penniless and badly off.</p> <p>87. anything but – definitely not: The hotel food was anything but cheap.</p> <p>88. eat a humble pie/eat your words – to apologise: She had to eat her words after realising the mistake she had made.</p> <p>89. lift sb's spirits – to make sb feel happier: A cup of coffee and country music can lift your spirits.</p> <p>90. watch your step – be careful: You need to watch your step if you are to keep in school.</p> <p>91. pull out all the stops – do everything possible: The doctors are pulling out all the stops to save the patient's life.</p>
---	--

<p>33. lay sb to rest – bury somebody: He was laid to rest at his ancestral home in Makindye.</p> <p>34. at your beck and call – always there when you need it/them: I had two servants at my beck and call.</p> <p>35. rise and shine – wake up: Rise and shine sleepy head.</p> <p>36. in ruins – destroyed or severely damaged: Fighting between Russia and Ukraine has left some towns in ruins.</p> <p>37. in rags – wearing old clothes: The old man was clad in rags.</p> <p>38. wet your bed – to urinate on your bed: Little children are apt to wet their beds.</p> <p>39. pay your last respects – attend the burial of someone: So many people were there to pay their last respects to fallen hero.</p> <p>40. etched in your memory – very difficult to forget: The accident was all etched in her memory.</p> <p>41. dined and wined – ate and drank</p> <p>42. at the eleventh hour/in the nick of time – at the last moment</p> <p>43. in a flash/at the drop of a hat/in a blink/twinkling of an eye – very quickly</p> <p>44. full of beans – full of life: The girls were out playing and full of beans.</p> <p>45. once in a blue moon – very rarely</p> <p>46. Benjamin of the family – The youngest child in the family</p> <p>47. Beyond your wildest dreams – far more than you could have hoped for or imagined, e.g. Her investment in poultry has brought her wealth beyond her wildest dreams.</p>	<p>92. spick and span – (of a room, compound) very clean: Her room was always spick and span.</p> <p>93. a stone's throw – a short distance: The hotel was a stone's throw from the beach.</p> <p>94. every Tom, Dick or Harry/ all and sundry – everybody: All and sundry must have their identity card.</p> <p>95. give sb a hand – to help sb: I gave my mother a hand while she washed the clothes.</p> <p>96. give sb the cold shoulder - Ignore or treat someone in an unfriendly way: My father has been giving me the cold shoulder after my failing exams.</p> <p>97. cry crocodile tears - To pretend to be upset or sad about sth: She shed crocodile tears when her errant husband died.</p> <p>98. sit on the fence –to take no sides in a fight, argument, etc.</p> <p>99. take a French leave – to leave without permission</p> <p>100. mouth-watering – delicious/yummy/sweet/tasty</p> <p>101. take to your heels – to run away</p> <p>102. in jeopardy – in a dangerous situation</p> <p>103. Bitter pill to swallow – hard to accept</p> <p>104. Beat about the bush – not direct to the point</p> <p>105. True blue – genuine</p> <p>106. A barrel of laughs – a funny person</p>
---	---

COMMON MISTAKES

Written and spoken English is awash with mistakes, and this treatise will open a new chapter on your voyage of discovery. Please enjoy the next few pages.

1 Don't use **a** or **an** to refer to uncountable nouns:

Wrong: I have an exciting news for you.

Correct: I have (some) exciting news for you.

I have an exciting piece of news for you.

2 Able is followed by a to – infinitive verb:

Wrong: I will be able start the job next week.

Correct: I will be able to start the job next week.

3 About is usually used to introduce a topic in informal styles. In formal styles, use Regarding/With regard to ...

Wrong: About my wages, I kindly request that you review the situation.

Correct: Regarding my wages, I kindly request that you review the situation.

4 Accept is not usually followed by another verb. Don't say someone accept to do sth, say someone agree to do sth:

Wrong: My father accepted to pick me up from the airport.

Correct: My father agreed to pick me from the airport.

5 Accommodation is always singular in British English.

Wrong: Would you like me to book overnight accommodations for you?

Correct: Would you like me to book overnight accommodation for you?

6 To talk about the business of trying to persuade people to buy products or services, do not say 'advertisement', say 'advertising':

Wrong: She works for a big advertisement agency.

Correct: She works for a big advertising agency.

7 Advice is always singular, and it cannot be used with **a** or **an**. Say advice, some advice, etc.

Wrong: She listens to me and gives me a lot of useful advices.

She gave me a useful advice.

Correct: She listens to me and gives me a lot of useful advice.

She gave me a useful piece of advice.

8 Do not confuse the noun **advice** with the verb **advise**.

Wrong: I advice you to see a doctor.

Correct: I advise you to see a doctor.

9 When **afford** is followed by a verb, that verb cannot be in the -ing:

Wrong: I cannot afford buying a new phone.

Correct: I cannot afford to buy a new phone.

10 Again usually goes directly after the object in a sentence. You don't do again sth, but you do sth again:

Wrong: I hope you will again visit us.

Correct: I hope you will visit us again.

11 Amount of is usually used with uncountable nouns. Countable nouns use number of:

Wrong: They received a large amount of complaints.

Correct: They received a large number of complaints.

12 Would appreciate is usually followed by **it**:

Wrong: I would appreciate if you could pick me up from the station.

Correct: I would appreciate it if you would pick me up from the station.

13 Arrive is usually followed by at/in:

Wrong: I arrived to England in May.

Call me when you arrive to the airport.

Correct: I arrived in England in May.

Call me when you arrive at the airport.

14 As is not usually used before a noun or a noun phrase to make comparisons:

Wrong: He hopes to become a chemist as his brother.

She is as tall like her mother.

Correct: He hopes to become a chemist like his brother.

She is as tall as her mother.

15 Don't say 'in the beach', say on the beach:

Wrong: We spent the whole day playing in the beach.

Correct: They spent the whole day playing on the beach.

16 Behaviour does not have a plural form especially in specialised use:

Wrong: There can be many reasons for children's behaviours.

Correct: There can be many reasons for children's behaviour.

17 Better does not usually come between the verb and its object.

Wrong: Since my visit to England I understand better English.

Correct: Since my visit to England I understand English better.

18 You don't usually use **big** before uncountable nouns. Do not say big progress/ fun, etc.

Wrong: My work is of big importance to me.

Correct: My work is of great importance to me.

19 When **billion/ million/ trillion/ hundred** is used after a particular number, it is used in the singular form and without **of**.

Wrong: The palace cost at least 3 billions of dollars.

Correct: The palace cost at least 3 billion dollars.

NB: When billion is used without a particular number, it is used in the plural form and it is sometimes followed by **of**.

The palace must have cost billions (of dollars)

20 Do not confuse the noun **breath** with the verb **breathe**

Wrong: Pollution is damaging the air we breath.

Correct: Pollution is damaging the air we breathe.

21 Don't say **make business**, say do business.

Wrong: We have been making business with this company for five years.

Correct: We have been doing business with this company for five years.

22 **Cannot** is always written as a single word:

Wrong: I can not imagine life without Islam.

Correct: I cannot imagine life without Islam.

23 Don't say **capable to do sth**, say capable of doing sth:

Wrong: The new receptionist must be capable to deal with customers.

Correct: The new receptionist must be capable of dealing with customers.

24 Don't say **do changes**, say make changes:

Wrong: I suggest you do changes to the programme.

Correct: I suggest you make changes to the programme.

25 To talk about a room where students are taught, don't say **class**, say classroom.

Wrong: The classes had central heating and big windows.

Correct: The classrooms had central heating and big windows.

26 To talk about sth not being distant in position or time, don't say **closed**, say close.

Wrong: Our house is very closed to the airport.

Correct: Our house is very close to the airport.

27 To talk about things that you wear, don't say **cloth** or **cloths**, say clothes.

Wrong: Bring summer cloths with you as the weather will be warm.

Correct: Bring summer clothes with you as the weather will be warm.

NB: Clothes is always plural. To talk about one particular thing that you wear, say a piece/ item of clothing.

28 To talk about moving towards a town, village, etc. where the speaker is or going there with the speaker, don't say **come in** or **come at**, say come to.

Wrong: Next time you come in London please stay at my house.

Correct: Next time you come to London please stay at my house.

29 To say that people or things are not different, special or unexpected in any way, don't use **common**, use **ordinary**:

Wrong: The programme shows how common Italians live today.

Correct: The programme shows how ordinary Italians live today.

30

PROPER HANDWRITING

- There are two kinds of letters i.e. capital and small letters.

SYMBOLS USED IN HANDWRITING

A standing stick

A backward slanting stick

A forward slanting stick

A sleeping stick

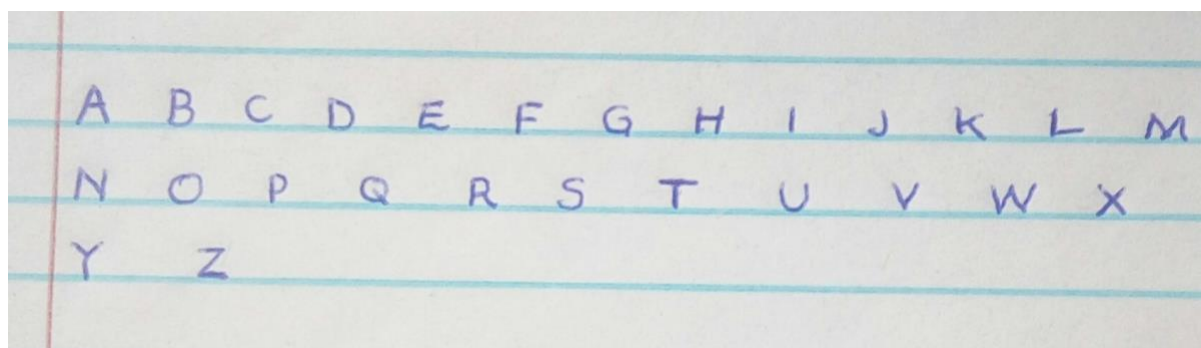
A circle

A curve forward

A curve backward

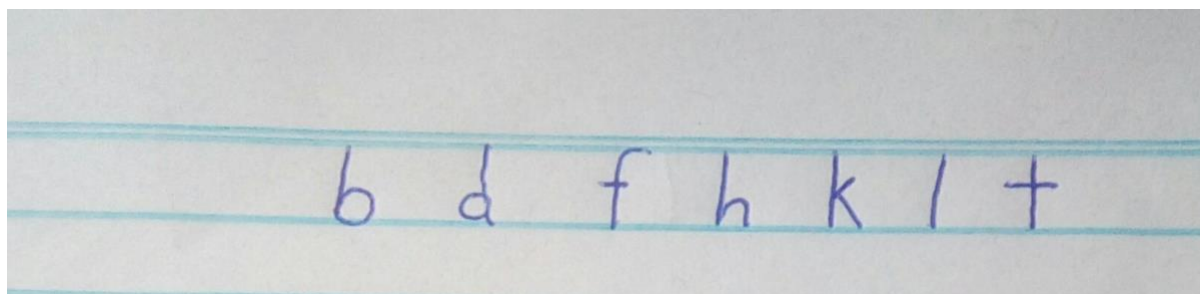
-

- All capital letters must be equal in size and height.

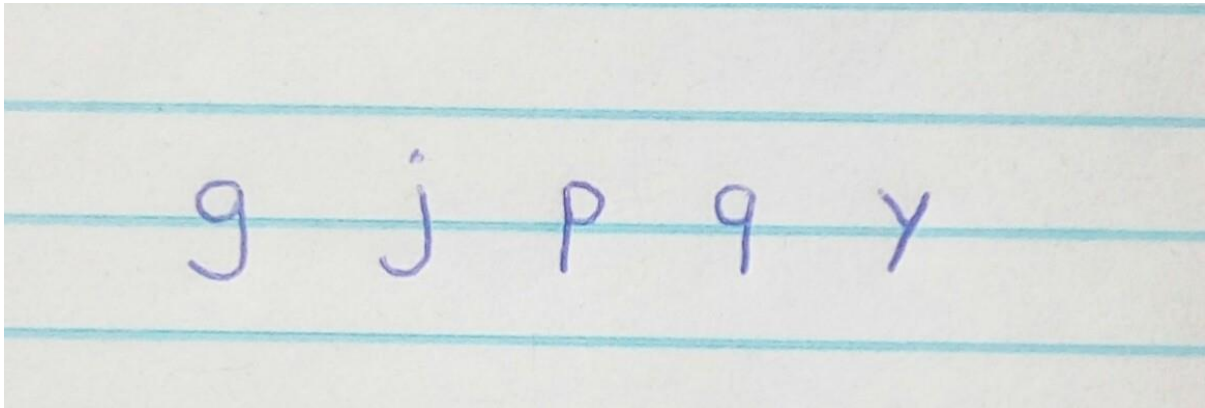


It should be realized that no capital letter touches the upper line. This mistake is common with letters such as T, W, S, A, Y, and so on.

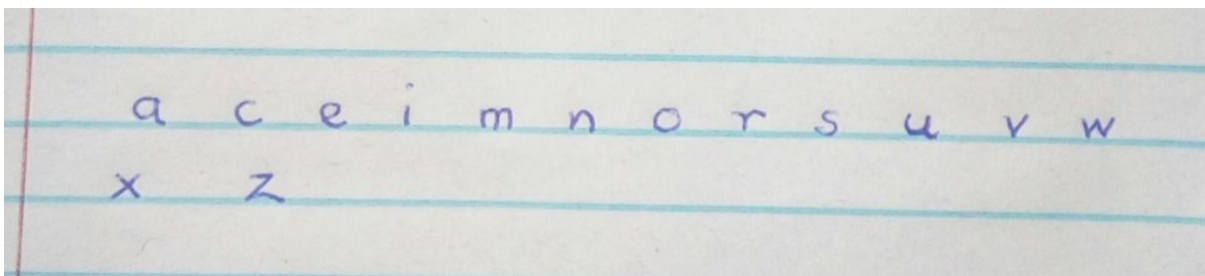
- There are three kinds of small letters i.e. sky, line and ground letters.
- When writing sky letters, the ascenders should touch the upper line and they should be equal and upright.



While writing grass letters, the descenders should reach three-quarters of the lower line.

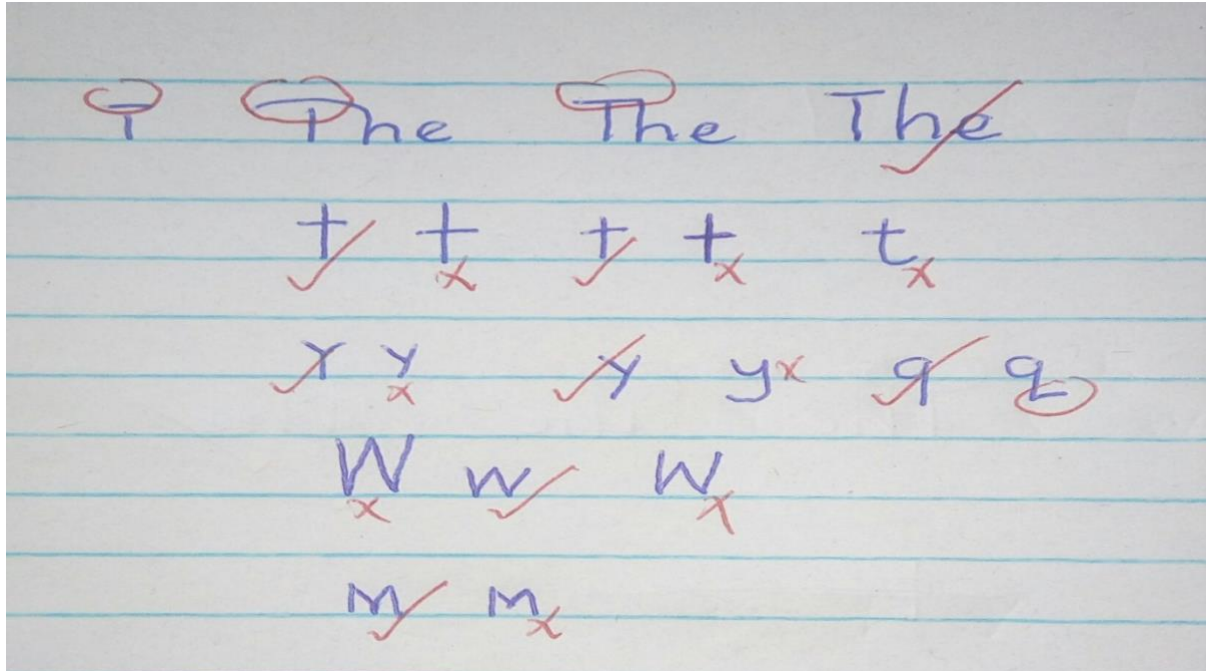


- The line case letters must all be equal in size and height.



Note:

Mind the way your pupils shape their letters. Examiners may disappoint your efforts by looking at the handwriting, and the whole thing is flipped upside down.



Self-assessment exercise

- How have you been writing small letter q?
- Can you really write letters M and W properly?
- Have you been writing small letter f as a sky or ground letter?
- When you write words such as man, son, can, etc., in the middle of the sentence, do you think they are proper?
- Does your s within a sentence look like the one at the beginning or not?
- Do you write letter e as e or o? Try to write the word write. Did you really write it with a properly shaped e at the end or did you write o?

Activity

Using only small letters, write each of the following words properly.

1. squeeze
2. friend
3. senior
4. queen
5. tree

Write each of the following sentences properly.

6. It was chasing the rat.
7. Milk is squeezed out of udders.
8. Paul is a secondary school teacher.
9. Winnie has a passion for flowers.
10. Jessica is a senior woman.
11. Alex has some apples.
12. Anne is an active actress.
13. Betty has a blue bag.
14. Bob is a bouncing baby boy.
15. A cow has a calf.
16. Catherine cares about cats.
17. Dorothy has a duster.
18. A dog cannot dig.
19. Elephants have big ears.
20. Florence is flying a kite.

God bless you all. Suggestions and comments are welcome. Kindly call Mr. MatovuIssa on 0753786019 or email: matovuesah@hotmail.com